

# **PostgreSQL 7.3.2 Administrator's Guide**

**The PostgreSQL Global Development Group**

## **PostgreSQL 7.3.2 Administrator's Guide**

by The PostgreSQL Global Development Group

Copyright © 1996-2002 by The PostgreSQL Global Development Group

### **Legal Notice**

PostgreSQL is Copyright © 1996-2002 by the PostgreSQL Global Development Group and is distributed under the terms of the license of the University of California below.

Postgres95 is Copyright © 1994-5 by the Regents of the University of California.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose, without fee, and without a written agreement is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this paragraph and the following two paragraphs appear in all copies.

IN NO EVENT SHALL THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA BE LIABLE TO ANY PARTY FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING LOST PROFITS, ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE AND ITS DOCUMENTATION, EVEN IF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE SOFTWARE PROVIDED HEREUNDER IS ON AN "AS-IS" BASIS, AND THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA HAS NO OBLIGATIONS TO PROVIDE MAINTENANCE, SUPPORT, UPDATES, ENHANCEMENTS, OR MODIFICATIONS.

# Table of Contents

<b>Preface</b> .....	<b>i</b>
1. What is PostgreSQL? .....	i
2. A Short History of PostgreSQL .....	i
2.1. The Berkeley POSTGRES Project .....	ii
2.2. Postgres95.....	ii
2.3. PostgreSQL.....	iii
3. What's In This Book .....	iv
4. Overview of Documentation Resources.....	iv
5. Terminology and Notation .....	v
6. Bug Reporting Guidelines.....	vi
6.1. Identifying Bugs .....	vi
6.2. What to report.....	vii
6.3. Where to report bugs .....	viii
<b>1. Installation Instructions</b> .....	<b>1</b>
1.1. Short Version.....	1
1.2. Requirements .....	1
1.3. Getting The Source .....	3
1.4. If You Are Upgrading .....	4
1.5. Installation Procedure .....	5
1.6. Post-Installation Setup .....	10
1.6.1. Shared Libraries.....	11
1.6.2. Environment Variables .....	11
1.7. Supported Platforms.....	12
<b>2. Installation on Windows</b> .....	<b>18</b>
<b>3. Server Run-time Environment</b> .....	<b>19</b>
3.1. The PostgreSQL User Account.....	19
3.2. Creating a Database Cluster.....	19
3.3. Starting the Database Server .....	20
3.3.1. Server Start-up Failures .....	21
3.3.2. Client Connection Problems.....	22
3.4. Run-time Configuration .....	23
3.4.1. pg_settings.....	24
3.4.2. Planner and Optimizer Tuning.....	24
3.4.3. Logging and Debugging .....	26
3.4.4. General Operation .....	29
3.4.5. WAL .....	36
3.4.6. Short Options.....	37
3.5. Managing Kernel Resources .....	38
3.5.1. Shared Memory and Semaphores .....	38
3.5.2. Resource Limits.....	42
3.6. Shutting Down the Server .....	43
3.7. Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSL.....	44
3.8. Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSH Tunnels.....	45

<b>4. Database Users and Privileges</b> .....	<b>47</b>
4.1. Database Users .....	47
4.2. User Attributes .....	47
4.3. Groups .....	48
4.4. Privileges .....	48
4.5. Functions and Triggers .....	49
<b>5. Managing Databases</b> .....	<b>50</b>
5.1. Overview .....	50
5.2. Creating a Database .....	50
5.3. Template Databases.....	51
5.4. Database Configuration.....	52
5.5. Alternative Locations .....	53
5.6. Destroying a Database.....	54
<b>6. Client Authentication</b> .....	<b>55</b>
6.1. The <code>pg_hba.conf</code> file.....	55
6.2. Authentication methods .....	59
6.2.1. Trust authentication .....	59
6.2.2. Password authentication .....	60
6.2.3. Kerberos authentication.....	60
6.2.4. Ident-based authentication.....	61
6.2.4.1. Ident Authentication over TCP/IP.....	61
6.2.4.2. Ident Authentication over Local Sockets .....	62
6.2.4.3. Ident Maps .....	62
6.2.5. PAM Authentication.....	63
6.3. Authentication problems .....	63
<b>7. Localization</b> .....	<b>65</b>
7.1. Locale Support .....	65
7.1.1. Overview .....	65
7.1.2. Benefits .....	66
7.1.3. Problems .....	67
7.2. Multibyte Support .....	68
7.2.1. Supported character set encodings .....	68
7.2.2. Setting the Encoding.....	69
7.2.3. Automatic encoding conversion between server and client.....	70
7.2.4. What happens if the translation is not possible? .....	72
7.2.5. References .....	72
7.2.6. History .....	72
7.2.7. WIN1250 on Windows/ODBC.....	74
7.3. Single-byte character set recoding .....	75
<b>8. Routine Database Maintenance Tasks</b> .....	<b>77</b>
8.1. General Discussion .....	77
8.2. Routine Vacuuming.....	77
8.2.1. Recovering disk space .....	77
8.2.2. Updating planner statistics .....	78
8.2.3. Preventing transaction ID wraparound failures .....	79
8.3. Routine Reindexing.....	80

8.4. Log File Maintenance .....	81
<b>9. Backup and Restore.....</b>	<b>82</b>
9.1. SQL Dump .....	82
9.1.1. Restoring the dump.....	82
9.1.2. Using pg_dumpall .....	83
9.1.3. Large Databases.....	83
9.1.4. Caveats.....	84
9.2. File system level backup .....	85
9.3. Migration between releases.....	85
<b>10. Monitoring Database Activity .....</b>	<b>87</b>
10.1. Standard Unix Tools.....	87
10.2. Statistics Collector .....	88
10.2.1. Statistics Collection Configuration.....	88
10.2.2. Viewing Collected Statistics.....	88
10.3. Viewing Locks .....	92
<b>11. Monitoring Disk Usage.....</b>	<b>95</b>
11.1. Determining Disk Usage.....	95
11.2. Disk Full Failure .....	96
<b>12. Write-Ahead Logging (WAL) .....</b>	<b>97</b>
12.1. General Description .....	97
12.1.1. Immediate Benefits of WAL.....	97
12.1.2. Future Benefits.....	97
12.2. Implementation .....	98
12.2.1. Database Recovery with WAL .....	98
12.3. WAL Configuration.....	99
<b>13. Regression Tests .....</b>	<b>101</b>
13.1. Introduction.....	101
13.2. Running the Tests.....	101
13.3. Test Evaluation.....	102
13.3.1. Error message differences .....	102
13.3.2. Locale differences.....	103
13.3.3. Date and time differences .....	103
13.3.4. Floating-point differences.....	103
13.3.5. Polygon differences .....	104
13.3.6. Row ordering differences .....	104
13.3.7. The “random” test.....	104
13.4. Platform-specific comparison files.....	105
<b>A. Release Notes.....</b>	<b>106</b>
A.1. Release 7.3.2 .....	106
A.1.1. Migration to version 7.3.2 .....	106
A.1.2. Changes .....	106
A.2. Release 7.3.1 .....	107
A.2.1. Migration to version 7.3.1 .....	107
A.2.2. Changes .....	107
A.3. Release 7.3 .....	107
A.3.1. Overview.....	108

A.3.2. Migration to version 7.3 .....	109
A.3.3. Changes .....	109
A.3.3.1. Server Operation .....	109
A.3.3.2. Performance .....	110
A.3.3.3. Privileges.....	110
A.3.3.4. Server Configuration .....	110
A.3.3.5. Queries .....	111
A.3.3.6. Object Manipulation .....	112
A.3.3.7. Utility Commands .....	112
A.3.3.8. Data Types and Functions .....	113
A.3.3.9. Internationalization .....	115
A.3.3.10. Server-side Languages .....	115
A.3.3.11. Psql.....	115
A.3.3.12. Libpq .....	116
A.3.3.13. JDBC.....	116
A.3.3.14. Miscellaneous Interfaces .....	116
A.3.3.15. Source Code .....	117
A.3.3.16. Contrib .....	118
A.4. Release 7.2.4 .....	119
A.4.1. Migration to version 7.2.4 .....	119
A.4.2. Changes .....	119
A.5. Release 7.2.3 .....	119
A.5.1. Migration to version 7.2.3 .....	119
A.5.2. Changes .....	120
A.6. Release 7.2.2 .....	120
A.6.1. Migration to version 7.2.2 .....	120
A.6.2. Changes .....	120
A.7. Release 7.2.1 .....	121
A.7.1. Migration to version 7.2.1 .....	121
A.7.2. Changes .....	121
A.8. Release 7.2 .....	121
A.8.1. Overview.....	121
A.8.2. Migration to version 7.2 .....	122
A.8.3. Changes .....	123
A.8.3.1. Server Operation .....	123
A.8.3.2. Performance .....	123
A.8.3.3. Privileges.....	124
A.8.3.4. Client Authentication .....	124
A.8.3.5. Server Configuration .....	124
A.8.3.6. Queries .....	124
A.8.3.7. Schema Manipulation .....	124
A.8.3.8. Utility Commands.....	125
A.8.3.9. Data Types and Functions .....	125
A.8.3.10. Internationalization .....	126
A.8.3.11. PL/pgSQL .....	126
A.8.3.12. PL/Perl .....	127
A.8.3.13. PL/Tcl.....	127
A.8.3.14. PL/Python .....	127

A.8.3.15. Psql.....	127
A.8.3.16. Libpq.....	127
A.8.3.17. JDBC.....	127
A.8.3.18. ODBC.....	128
A.8.3.19. ECPG.....	128
A.8.3.20. Misc. Interfaces.....	129
A.8.3.21. Build and Install.....	129
A.8.3.22. Source Code.....	129
A.8.3.23. Contrib.....	130
A.9. Release 7.1.3.....	130
A.9.1. Migration to version 7.1.3.....	130
A.9.2. Changes.....	130
A.10. Release 7.1.2.....	131
A.10.1. Migration to version 7.1.2.....	131
A.10.2. Changes.....	131
A.11. Release 7.1.1.....	131
A.11.1. Migration to version 7.1.1.....	131
A.11.2. Changes.....	131
A.12. Release 7.1.....	132
A.12.1. Migration to version 7.1.....	132
A.12.2. Changes.....	133
A.13. Release 7.0.3.....	136
A.13.1. Migration to version 7.0.3.....	136
A.13.2. Changes.....	136
A.14. Release 7.0.2.....	137
A.14.1. Migration to version 7.0.2.....	138
A.14.2. Changes.....	138
A.15. Release 7.0.1.....	138
A.15.1. Migration to version 7.0.1.....	138
A.15.2. Changes.....	138
A.16. Release 7.0.....	139
A.16.1. Migration to version 7.0.....	139
A.16.2. Changes.....	140
A.17. Release 6.5.3.....	146
A.17.1. Migration to version 6.5.3.....	146
A.17.2. Changes.....	146
A.18. Release 6.5.2.....	147
A.18.1. Migration to version 6.5.2.....	147
A.18.2. Changes.....	147
A.19. Release 6.5.1.....	147
A.19.1. Migration to version 6.5.1.....	148
A.19.2. Changes.....	148
A.20. Release 6.5.....	148
A.20.1. Migration to version 6.5.....	149
A.20.1.1. Multiversion Concurrency Control.....	150
A.20.2. Changes.....	150
A.21. Release 6.4.2.....	153
A.21.1. Migration to version 6.4.2.....	154

A.21.2. Changes .....	154
A.22. Release 6.4.1 .....	154
A.22.1. Migration to version 6.4.1 .....	154
A.22.2. Changes .....	154
A.23. Release 6.4 .....	155
A.23.1. Migration to version 6.4 .....	156
A.23.2. Changes .....	156
A.24. Release 6.3.2 .....	159
A.24.1. Changes .....	160
A.25. Release 6.3.1 .....	160
A.25.1. Changes .....	161
A.26. Release 6.3 .....	162
A.26.1. Migration to version 6.3 .....	163
A.26.2. Changes .....	163
A.27. Release 6.2.1 .....	166
A.27.1. Migration from version 6.2 to version 6.2.1 .....	167
A.27.2. Changes .....	167
A.28. Release 6.2 .....	167
A.28.1. Migration from version 6.1 to version 6.2 .....	167
A.28.2. Migration from version 1.x to version 6.2 .....	168
A.28.3. Changes .....	168
A.29. Release 6.1.1 .....	170
A.29.1. Migration from version 6.1 to version 6.1.1 .....	170
A.29.2. Changes .....	170
A.30. Release 6.1 .....	171
A.30.1. Migration to version 6.1 .....	171
A.30.2. Changes .....	171
A.31. Release 6.0 .....	173
A.31.1. Migration from version 1.09 to version 6.0 .....	173
A.31.2. Migration from pre-1.09 to version 6.0 .....	174
A.31.3. Changes .....	174
A.32. Release 1.09 .....	176
A.33. Release 1.02 .....	176
A.33.1. Migration from version 1.02 to version 1.02.1 .....	176
A.33.2. Dump/Reload Procedure .....	177
A.33.3. Changes .....	177
A.34. Release 1.01 .....	178
A.34.1. Migration from version 1.0 to version 1.01 .....	178
A.34.2. Changes .....	180
A.35. Release 1.0 .....	180
A.35.1. Changes .....	180
A.36. Postgres95 Release 0.03 .....	181
A.36.1. Changes .....	181
A.37. Postgres95 Release 0.02 .....	183
A.37.1. Changes .....	184
A.38. Postgres95 Release 0.01 .....	184

**Bibliography .....186**  
**Index.....188**

# List of Tables

3-1. pg_settings Columns .....	24
3-2. Short option key .....	37
3-3. System V IPC parameters.....	38
7-1. Character Set Encodings .....	68
7-2. Client/Server Character Set Encodings .....	70
10-1. Standard Statistics Views .....	89
10-2. Statistics Access Functions .....	90
10-3. Lock Status System View .....	93

# List of Examples

6-1. An example pg_hba.conf file.....	58
6-2. An example pg_ident.conf file .....	63

# Preface

## 1. What is PostgreSQL?

PostgreSQL is an object-relational database management system (ORDBMS) based on POSTGRES, Version 4.2<sup>1</sup>, developed at the University of California at Berkeley Computer Science Department. The POSTGRES project, led by Professor Michael Stonebraker, was sponsored by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the Army Research Office (ARO), the National Science Foundation (NSF), and ESL, Inc.

PostgreSQL is an open-source descendant of this original Berkeley code. It provides SQL92/SQL99 language support and other modern features.

POSTGRES pioneered many of the object-relational concepts now becoming available in some commercial databases. Traditional relational database management systems (RDBMS) support a data model consisting of a collection of named relations, containing attributes of a specific type. In current commercial systems, possible types include floating point numbers, integers, character strings, money, and dates. It is commonly recognized that this model is inadequate for future data-processing applications. The relational model successfully replaced previous models in part because of its “Spartan simplicity”. However, this simplicity makes the implementation of certain applications very difficult. PostgreSQL offers substantial additional power by incorporating the following additional concepts in such a way that users can easily extend the system:

- inheritance
- data types
- functions

Other features provide additional power and flexibility:

- constraints
- triggers
- rules
- transactional integrity

These features put PostgreSQL into the category of databases referred to as *object-relational*. Note that this is distinct from those referred to as *object-oriented*, which in general are not as well suited to supporting traditional relational database languages. So, although PostgreSQL has some object-oriented features, it is firmly in the relational database world. In fact, some commercial databases have recently incorporated features pioneered by PostgreSQL.

---

1. <http://s2k-ftp.CS.Berkeley.EDU:8000/postgres/postgres.html>

## 2. A Short History of PostgreSQL

The object-relational database management system now known as PostgreSQL (and briefly called Postgres95) is derived from the POSTGRES package written at the University of California at Berkeley. With over a decade of development behind it, PostgreSQL is the most advanced open-source database available anywhere, offering multiversion concurrency control, supporting almost all SQL constructs (including subselects, transactions, and user-defined types and functions), and having a wide range of language bindings available (including C, C++, Java, Perl, Tcl, and Python).

### 2.1. The Berkeley POSTGRES Project

Implementation of the POSTGRES DBMS began in 1986. The initial concepts for the system were presented in *The design of POSTGRES* and the definition of the initial data model appeared in *The POSTGRES data model*. The design of the rule system at that time was described in *The design of the POSTGRES rules system*. The rationale and architecture of the storage manager were detailed in *The design of the POSTGRES storage system*.

Postgres has undergone several major releases since then. The first “demoware” system became operational in 1987 and was shown at the 1988 ACM-SIGMOD Conference. Version 1, described in *The implementation of POSTGRES*, was released to a few external users in June 1989. In response to a critique of the first rule system (*A commentary on the POSTGRES rules system*), the rule system was redesigned (*On Rules, Procedures, Caching and Views in Database Systems*) and Version 2 was released in June 1990 with the new rule system. Version 3 appeared in 1991 and added support for multiple storage managers, an improved query executor, and a rewritten rewrite rule system. For the most part, subsequent releases until Postgres95 (see below) focused on portability and reliability.

POSTGRES has been used to implement many different research and production applications. These include: a financial data analysis system, a jet engine performance monitoring package, an asteroid tracking database, a medical information database, and several geographic information systems. POSTGRES has also been used as an educational tool at several universities. Finally, Illustra Information Technologies (later merged into Informix<sup>2</sup>, which is now owned by IBM<sup>3</sup>.) picked up the code and commercialized it. POSTGRES became the primary data manager for the Sequoia 2000<sup>4</sup> scientific computing project in late 1992.

The size of the external user community nearly doubled during 1993. It became increasingly obvious that maintenance of the prototype code and support was taking up large amounts of time that should have been devoted to database research. In an effort to reduce this support burden, the Berkeley POSTGRES project officially ended with Version 4.2.

### 2.2. Postgres95

In 1994, Andrew Yu and Jolly Chen added a SQL language interpreter to POSTGRES. Postgres95 was subsequently released to the Web to find its own way in the world as an open-source descendant of the original POSTGRES Berkeley code.

Postgres95 code was completely ANSI C and trimmed in size by 25%. Many internal changes improved performance and maintainability. Postgres95 release 1.0.x ran about 30-50% faster on the Wisconsin

---

2. <http://www.informix.com/>

3. <http://www.ibm.com/>

4. [http://meteora.ucsd.edu/s2k/s2k\\_home.html](http://meteora.ucsd.edu/s2k/s2k_home.html)

Benchmark compared to POSTGRES, Version 4.2. Apart from bug fixes, the following were the major enhancements:

- The query language PostQUEL was replaced with SQL (implemented in the server). Subqueries were not supported until PostgreSQL (see below), but they could be imitated in Postgres95 with user-defined SQL functions. Aggregates were re-implemented. Support for the GROUP BY query clause was also added. The `libpq` interface remained available for C programs.
- In addition to the monitor program, a new program (`psql`) was provided for interactive SQL queries using GNU Readline.
- A new front-end library, `libpgtcl`, supported Tcl-based clients. A sample shell, `pgtclsh`, provided new Tcl commands to interface Tcl programs with the Postgres95 backend.
- The large-object interface was overhauled. The Inversion large objects were the only mechanism for storing large objects. (The Inversion file system was removed.)
- The instance-level rule system was removed. Rules were still available as rewrite rules.
- A short tutorial introducing regular SQL features as well as those of Postgres95 was distributed with the source code
- GNU make (instead of BSD make) was used for the build. Also, Postgres95 could be compiled with an unpatched GCC (data alignment of doubles was fixed).

## 2.3. PostgreSQL

By 1996, it became clear that the name “Postgres95” would not stand the test of time. We chose a new name, PostgreSQL, to reflect the relationship between the original POSTGRES and the more recent versions with SQL capability. At the same time, we set the version numbering to start at 6.0, putting the numbers back into the sequence originally begun by the Berkeley POSTGRES project.

The emphasis during development of Postgres95 was on identifying and understanding existing problems in the backend code. With PostgreSQL, the emphasis has shifted to augmenting features and capabilities, although work continues in all areas.

Major enhancements in PostgreSQL include:

- Table-level locking has been replaced by multiversion concurrency control, which allows readers to continue reading consistent data during writer activity and enables hot backups from `pg_dump` while the database stays available for queries.
- Important backend features, including subselects, defaults, constraints, and triggers, have been implemented.
- Additional SQL92-compliant language features have been added, including primary keys, quoted identifiers, literal string type coercion, type casting, and binary and hexadecimal integer input.
- Built-in types have been improved, including new wide-range date/time types and additional geometric type support.
- Overall backend code speed has been increased by approximately 20-40%, and backend start-up time has decreased by 80% since version 6.0 was released.

### 3. What's In This Book

This book covers topics that are of interest to a PostgreSQL database administrator. This includes installation of the software, set up and configuration of the server, management of users and databases, and maintenance tasks. Anyone who runs a PostgreSQL server, either for personal use, but especially in production, should be familiar with the topics covered in this book.

The information in this book is arranged approximately in the order in which a new user should read it. But the chapters are self-contained and can be read individually as desired. The information in this book is presented in a narrative fashion in topical units. Readers looking for a complete description of a particular command should look into the *PostgreSQL Reference Manual*.

The first few chapters are written so that they can be understood without prerequisite knowledge, so that new users who need to set up their own server can begin their exploration with this book. The rest of this book which is about tuning and management presupposes that the reader is familiar with the general use of the PostgreSQL database system. Readers are encouraged to look at the *PostgreSQL Tutorial* and the *PostgreSQL User's Guide* for additional information.

This book covers PostgreSQL 7.3.2 only. For information on other versions, please read the documentation that accompanies that release.

### 4. Overview of Documentation Resources

The PostgreSQL documentation is organized into several books:

#### *PostgreSQL Tutorial*

An informal introduction for new users.

#### *PostgreSQL User's Guide*

Documents the SQL query language environment, including data types and functions, as well as user-level performance tuning. Every PostgreSQL user should read this.

#### *PostgreSQL Administrator's Guide*

Installation and server management information. Everyone who runs a PostgreSQL server, either for personal use or for other users, needs to read this.

#### *PostgreSQL Programmer's Guide*

Advanced information for application programmers. Topics include type and function extensibility, library interfaces, and application design issues.

#### *PostgreSQL Reference Manual*

Reference pages for SQL command syntax, and client and server programs. This book is auxiliary to the User's, Administrator's, and Programmer's Guides.

#### *PostgreSQL Developer's Guide*

Information for PostgreSQL developers. This is intended for those who are contributing to the PostgreSQL project; application development information appears in the *Programmer's Guide*.

In addition to this manual set, there are other resources to help you with PostgreSQL installation and use:

man pages

The *Reference Manual*'s pages in the traditional Unix man format. There is no difference in content.

FAQs

Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) lists document both general issues and some platform-specific issues.

READMEs

README files are available for some contributed packages.

Web Site

The PostgreSQL web site<sup>5</sup> carries details on the latest release, upcoming features, and other information to make your work or play with PostgreSQL more productive.

Mailing Lists

The mailing lists are a good place to have your questions answered, to share experiences with other users, and to contact the developers. Consult the User's Lounge<sup>6</sup> section of the PostgreSQL web site for details.

Yourself!

PostgreSQL is an open-source effort. As such, it depends on the user community for ongoing support. As you begin to use PostgreSQL, you will rely on others for help, either through the documentation or through the mailing lists. Consider contributing your knowledge back. If you learn something which is not in the documentation, write it up and contribute it. If you add features to the code, contribute them.

Even those without a lot of experience can provide corrections and minor changes in the documentation, and that is a good way to start. The <pgsql-docs@postgresql.org> mailing list is the place to get going.

## 5. Terminology and Notation

An *administrator* is generally a person who is in charge of installing and running the server. A *user* could be anyone who is using, or wants to use, any part of the PostgreSQL system. These terms should not be interpreted too narrowly; this documentation set does not have fixed presumptions about system administration procedures.

We use `/usr/local/pgsql/` as the root directory of the installation and `/usr/local/pgsql/data` as the directory with the database files. These directories may vary on your site, details can be derived in the *Administrator's Guide*.

---

5. <http://www.postgresql.org>

6. <http://www.postgresql.org/users-lounge/>

In a command synopsis, brackets ([ and ]) indicate an optional phrase or keyword. Anything in braces ({ and }) and containing vertical bars (|) indicates that you must choose one alternative.

Examples will show commands executed from various accounts and programs. Commands executed from a Unix shell may be preceded with a dollar sign (“\$”). Commands executed from particular user accounts such as root or postgres are specially flagged and explained. SQL commands may be preceded with “=>” or will have no leading prompt, depending on the context.

**Note:** The notation for flagging commands is not universally consistent throughout the documentation set. Please report problems to the documentation mailing list <pgsql-docs@postgresql.org>.

## 6. Bug Reporting Guidelines

When you find a bug in PostgreSQL we want to hear about it. Your bug reports play an important part in making PostgreSQL more reliable because even the utmost care cannot guarantee that every part of PostgreSQL will work on every platform under every circumstance.

The following suggestions are intended to assist you in forming bug reports that can be handled in an effective fashion. No one is required to follow them but it tends to be to everyone’s advantage.

We cannot promise to fix every bug right away. If the bug is obvious, critical, or affects a lot of users, chances are good that someone will look into it. It could also happen that we tell you to update to a newer version to see if the bug happens there. Or we might decide that the bug cannot be fixed before some major rewrite we might be planning is done. Or perhaps it is simply too hard and there are more important things on the agenda. If you need help immediately, consider obtaining a commercial support contract.

### 6.1. Identifying Bugs

Before you report a bug, please read and re-read the documentation to verify that you can really do whatever it is you are trying. If it is not clear from the documentation whether you can do something or not, please report that too; it is a bug in the documentation. If it turns out that the program does something different from what the documentation says, that is a bug. That might include, but is not limited to, the following circumstances:

- A program terminates with a fatal signal or an operating system error message that would point to a problem in the program. (A counterexample might be a “disk full” message, since you have to fix that yourself.)
- A program produces the wrong output for any given input.
- A program refuses to accept valid input (as defined in the documentation).
- A program accepts invalid input without a notice or error message. But keep in mind that your idea of invalid input might be our idea of an extension or compatibility with traditional practice.
- PostgreSQL fails to compile, build, or install according to the instructions on supported platforms.

Here “program” refers to any executable, not only the backend server.

Being slow or resource-hogging is not necessarily a bug. Read the documentation or ask on one of the mailing lists for help in tuning your applications. Failing to comply to the SQL standard is not necessarily a bug either, unless compliance for the specific feature is explicitly claimed.

Before you continue, check on the TODO list and in the FAQ to see if your bug is already known. If you cannot decode the information on the TODO list, report your problem. The least we can do is make the TODO list clearer.

## 6.2. What to report

The most important thing to remember about bug reporting is to state all the facts and only facts. Do not speculate what you think went wrong, what “it seemed to do”, or which part of the program has a fault. If you are not familiar with the implementation you would probably guess wrong and not help us a bit. And even if you are, educated explanations are a great supplement to but no substitute for facts. If we are going to fix the bug we still have to see it happen for ourselves first. Reporting the bare facts is relatively straightforward (you can probably copy and paste them from the screen) but all too often important details are left out because someone thought it does not matter or the report would be understood anyway.

The following items should be contained in every bug report:

- The exact sequence of steps *from program start-up* necessary to reproduce the problem. This should be self-contained; it is not enough to send in a bare select statement without the preceding create table and insert statements, if the output should depend on the data in the tables. We do not have the time to reverse-engineer your database schema, and if we are supposed to make up our own data we would probably miss the problem. The best format for a test case for query-language related problems is a file that can be run through the psql frontend that shows the problem. (Be sure to not have anything in your `~/ .psqlrc` start-up file.) An easy start at this file is to use `pg_dump` to dump out the table declarations and data needed to set the scene, then add the problem query. You are encouraged to minimize the size of your example, but this is not absolutely necessary. If the bug is reproducible, we will find it either way.

If your application uses some other client interface, such as PHP, then please try to isolate the offending queries. We will probably not set up a web server to reproduce your problem. In any case remember to provide the exact input files, do not guess that the problem happens for “large files” or “mid-size databases”, etc. since this information is too inexact to be of use.

- The output you got. Please do not say that it “didn’t work” or “crashed”. If there is an error message, show it, even if you do not understand it. If the program terminates with an operating system error, say which. If nothing at all happens, say so. Even if the result of your test case is a program crash or otherwise obvious it might not happen on our platform. The easiest thing is to copy the output from the terminal, if possible.

**Note:** In case of fatal errors, the error message reported by the client might not contain all the information available. Please also look at the log output of the database server. If you do not keep your server’s log output, this would be a good time to start doing so.

- The output you expected is very important to state. If you just write “This command gives me that output.” or “This is not what I expected.”, we might run it ourselves, scan the output, and think it looks OK and is exactly what we expected. We should not have to spend the time to decode the exact semantics behind your commands. Especially refrain from merely saying that “This is not what SQL says/Oracle does.” Digging out the correct behavior from SQL is not a fun undertaking, nor do we all know how all the other relational databases out there behave. (If your problem is a program crash, you can obviously omit this item.)
- Any command line options and other start-up options, including concerned environment variables or configuration files that you changed from the default. Again, be exact. If you are using a prepackaged distribution that starts the database server at boot time, you should try to find out how that is done.
- Anything you did at all differently from the installation instructions.
- The PostgreSQL version. You can run the command `SELECT version();` to find out the version of the server you are connected to. Most executable programs also support a `--version` option; at least `postmaster --version` and `psql --version` should work. If the function or the options do not exist then your version is more than old enough to warrant an upgrade. You can also look into the `README` file in the source directory or at the name of your distribution file or package name. If you run a prepackaged version, such as RPMs, say so, including any subversion the package may have. If you are talking about a CVS snapshot, mention that, including its date and time.

If your version is older than 7.3.2 we will almost certainly tell you to upgrade. There are tons of bug fixes in each new release, that is why we make new releases.

- Platform information. This includes the kernel name and version, C library, processor, memory information. In most cases it is sufficient to report the vendor and version, but do not assume everyone knows what exactly “Debian” contains or that everyone runs on Pentiums. If you have installation problems then information about compilers, make, etc. is also necessary.

Do not be afraid if your bug report becomes rather lengthy. That is a fact of life. It is better to report everything the first time than us having to squeeze the facts out of you. On the other hand, if your input files are huge, it is fair to ask first whether somebody is interested in looking into it.

Do not spend all your time to figure out which changes in the input make the problem go away. This will probably not help solving it. If it turns out that the bug cannot be fixed right away, you will still have time to find and share your work-around. Also, once again, do not waste your time guessing why the bug exists. We will find that out soon enough.

When writing a bug report, please choose non-confusing terminology. The software package in total is called “PostgreSQL”, sometimes “Postgres” for short. If you are specifically talking about the backend server, mention that, do not just say “PostgreSQL crashes”. A crash of a single backend server process is quite different from crash of the parent “postmaster” process; please don’t say “the postmaster crashed” when you mean a single backend went down, nor vice versa. Also, client programs such as the interactive frontend “psql” are completely separate from the backend. Please try to be specific about whether the problem is on the client or server side.

### 6.3. Where to report bugs

In general, send bug reports to the bug report mailing list at [pgsql-bugs@postgresql.org](mailto:pgsql-bugs@postgresql.org). You are

requested to use a descriptive subject for your email message, perhaps parts of the error message.

Another method is to fill in the bug report web-form available at the project's web site <http://www.postgresql.org/>. Entering a bug report this way causes it to be mailed to the `<pgsql-bugs@postgresql.org>` mailing list.

Do not send bug reports to any of the user mailing lists, such as `<pgsql-sql@postgresql.org>` or `<pgsql-general@postgresql.org>`. These mailing lists are for answering user questions and their subscribers normally do not wish to receive bug reports. More importantly, they are unlikely to fix them.

Also, please do *not* send reports to the developers' mailing list `<pgsql-hackers@postgresql.org>`. This list is for discussing the development of PostgreSQL and it would be nice if we could keep the bug reports separate. We might choose to take up a discussion about your bug report on `pgsql-hackers`, if the problem needs more review.

If you have a problem with the documentation, the best place to report it is the documentation mailing list `<pgsql-docs@postgresql.org>`. Please be specific about what part of the documentation you are unhappy with.

If your bug is a portability problem on a non-supported platform, send mail to `<pgsql-ports@postgresql.org>`, so we (and you) can work on porting PostgreSQL to your platform.

**Note:** Due to the unfortunate amount of spam going around, all of the above email addresses are closed mailing lists. That is, you need to be subscribed to a list to be allowed to post on it. (You need not be subscribed to use the bug report web-form, however.) If you would like to send mail but do not want to receive list traffic, you can subscribe and set your subscription option to `nomail`. For more information send mail to `<majordomo@postgresql.org>` with the single word `help` in the body of the message.

# Chapter 1. Installation Instructions

This chapter describes the installation of PostgreSQL from the source code distribution.

## 1.1. Short Version

```
./configure
gmake
su
gmake install
adduser postgres
mkdir /usr/local/pgsql/data
chown postgres /usr/local/pgsql/data
su - postgres
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/postmaster -D /usr/local/pgsql/data >logfile 2>&1 &
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/createdb test
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/psql test
```

The long version is the rest of this chapter.

## 1.2. Requirements

In general, a modern Unix-compatible platform should be able to run PostgreSQL. The platforms that had received specific testing at the time of release are listed in Section 1.7 below. In the `doc` subdirectory of the distribution there are several platform-specific FAQ documents you might wish to consult if you are having trouble.

The following software packages are required for building PostgreSQL:

- GNU make is required; other make programs will *not* work. GNU make is often installed under the name `gmake`; this document will always refer to it by that name. (On some systems GNU make is the default tool with the name `make`.) To test for GNU make enter

```
gmake --version
```

It is recommended to use version 3.76.1 or later.

- You need an ISO/ANSI C compiler. Recent versions of GCC are recommendable, but PostgreSQL is known to build with a wide variety of compilers from different vendors.
- `gzip` is needed to unpack the distribution in the first place. If you are reading this, you probably already got past that hurdle.
- The GNU Readline library (for comfortable line editing and command history retrieval) will be used by default. If you don't want to use it then you must specify the `--without-readline` option for `configure`. (On NetBSD, the `libedit` library is readline-compatible and is used if `libreadline` is not found.)

- To build on Windows NT or Windows 2000 you need the Cygwin and cygipc packages. See the file `doc/FAQ_MSWIN` for details.

The following packages are optional. They are not required in the default configuration, but they are needed when certain build options are enabled, as explained below.

- To build the server programming language PL/Perl you need a full Perl installation, including the `libperl` library and the header files. Since PL/Perl will be a shared library, the `libperl` library must be a shared library also on most platforms. This appears to be the default in recent Perl versions, but it was not in earlier versions, and in general it is the choice of whomever installed Perl at your site.

If you don't have the shared library but you need one, a message like this will appear during the build to point out this fact:

```
*** Cannot build PL/Perl because libperl is not a shared library.
*** You might have to rebuild your Perl installation. Refer to
*** the documentation for details.
```

(If you don't follow the on-screen output you will merely notice that the PL/Perl library object, `plperl.so` or similar, will not be installed.) If you see this, you will have to rebuild and install Perl manually to be able to build PL/Perl. During the configuration process for Perl, request a shared library.

- To build the Python interface module or the PL/Python server programming language, you need a Python installation, including the header files. Since PL/Python will be a shared library, the `libpython` library must be a shared library also on most platforms. This is not the case in a default Python installation.

If after building and installing you have a file called `plpython.so` (possibly a different extension), then everything went well. Otherwise you should have seen a notice like this flying by:

```
*** Cannot build PL/Python because libpython is not a shared library.
*** You might have to rebuild your Python installation. Refer to
*** the documentation for details.
```

That means you have to rebuild (part of) your Python installation to supply this shared library.

The catch is that the Python distribution or the Python maintainers do not provide any direct way to do this. The closest thing we can offer you is the information in Python FAQ 3.30<sup>1</sup>. On some operating systems you don't really have to build a shared library, but then you will have to convince the PostgreSQL build system of this. Consult the `Makefile` in the `src/pl/plpython` directory for details.

- If you want to build Tcl or Tk components (clients and the PL/Tcl language) you of course need a Tcl installation.
- To build the JDBC driver, you need Ant 1.5 or higher and a JDK. Ant is a special tool for building Java-based packages. It can be downloaded from the Ant web site<sup>2</sup>.

---

1. <http://www.python.org/doc/FAQ.html#3.30>  
2. <http://jakarta.apache.org/ant/index.html>

If you have several Java compilers installed, it depends on the Ant configuration which one gets used. Precompiled Ant distributions are typically set up to read a file `.antrc` in the current user's home directory for configuration. For example, to use a different JDK than the default, this may work:

```
JAVA_HOME=/usr/local/sun-jdk1.3
JAVACMD=$JAVA_HOME/bin/java
```

**Note:** Do not try to build the driver by calling `ant` or even `javac` directly. This will not work. Run `gmake` normally as described below.

- To enable Native Language Support (NLS), that is, the ability to display a program's messages in a language other than English, you need an implementation of the Gettext API. Some operating systems have this built-in (e.g., Linux, NetBSD, Solaris), for other systems you can download an add-on package from here: <http://www.postgresql.org/~petere/gettext.html>. If you are using the gettext implementation in the GNU C library then you will additionally need the GNU Gettext package for some utility programs. For any of the other implementations you will not need it.
- Kerberos, OpenSSL, or PAM, if you want to support authentication using these services.

If you are build from a CVS tree instead of using a released source package, or if you want to do development, you also need the following packages:

- Flex and Bison are needed to build a CVS checkout or if you changed the actual scanner and parser definition files. If you need them, be sure to get Flex 2.5.4 or later and Bison 1.50 or later. Other yacc programs can sometimes be used, but doing so requires extra effort and is not recommended. Other lex programs will definitely not work.

If you need to get a GNU package, you can find it at your local GNU mirror site (see <http://www.gnu.org/order/ftp.html> for a list) or at <ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/>.

Also check that you have sufficient disk space. You will need about 65 MB for the source tree during compilation and about 15 MB for the installation directory. An empty database cluster takes about 25 MB, databases take about five times the amount of space that a flat text file with the same data would take. If you are going to run the regression tests you will temporarily need up to an extra 90 MB. Use the `df` command to check for disk space.

### 1.3. Getting The Source

The PostgreSQL 7.3.2 sources can be obtained by anonymous FTP from <ftp://ftp.postgresql.org/pub/postgresql-7.3.2.tar.gz>. Use a mirror if possible. After you have obtained the file, unpack it:

```
gunzip postgresql-7.3.2.tar.gz
tar xf postgresql-7.3.2.tar
```

This will create a directory `postgresql-7.3.2` under the current directory with the PostgreSQL sources. Change into that directory for the rest of the installation procedure.

## 1.4. If You Are Upgrading

The internal data storage format changes with new releases of PostgreSQL. Therefore, if you are upgrading an existing installation that does not have a version number “7.3.x”, you must back up and restore your data as shown here. These instructions assume that your existing installation is under the `/usr/local/pgsql` directory, and that the data area is in `/usr/local/pgsql/data`. Substitute your paths appropriately.

1. Make sure that your database is not updated during or after the backup. This does not affect the integrity of the backup, but the changed data would of course not be included. If necessary, edit the permissions in the file `/usr/local/pgsql/data/pg_hba.conf` (or equivalent) to disallow access from everyone except you.
2. To back up your database installation, type:

```
pg_dumpall > outputfile
```

If you need to preserve OIDs (such as when using them as foreign keys), then use the `-o` option when running `pg_dumpall`.

`pg_dumpall` does not save large objects. Check Section 9.1.4 if you need to do this.

To make the backup, you can use the `pg_dumpall` command from the version you are currently running. For best results, however, try to use the `pg_dumpall` command from PostgreSQL 7.3.2, since this version contains bug fixes and improvements over older versions. While this advice might seem idiosyncratic since you haven’t installed the new version yet, it is advisable to follow it if you plan to install the new version in parallel with the old version. In that case you can complete the installation normally and transfer the data later. This will also decrease the downtime.

3. If you are installing the new version at the same location as the old one then shut down the old server, at the latest before you install the new files:

```
kill -INT `cat /usr/local/pgsql/data/postmaster.pid`
```

Versions prior to 7.0 do not have this `postmaster.pid` file. If you are using such a version you must find out the process id of the server yourself, for example by typing `ps ax | grep postmaster`, and supply it to the `kill` command.

On systems that have PostgreSQL started at boot time, there is probably a start-up file that will accomplish the same thing. For example, on a Red Hat Linux system one might find that

```
/etc/rc.d/init.d/postgresql stop
```

works. Another possibility is `pg_ctl stop`.

4. If you are installing in the same place as the old version then it is also a good idea to move the old installation out of the way, in case you have trouble and need to revert to it. Use a command like this:

```
mv /usr/local/pgsql /usr/local/pgsql.old
```

After you have installed PostgreSQL 7.3.2, create a new database directory and start the new server. Remember that you must execute these commands while logged in to the special database user account (which you already have if you are upgrading).

```
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/postmaster -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

Finally, restore your data with

```
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/psql -d template1 -f outputfile
```

using the *new* psql.

These topics are discussed at length in Section 9.3, which you are encouraged to read in any case.

## 1.5. Installation Procedure

### 1. Configuration

The first step of the installation procedure is to configure the source tree for your system and choose the options you would like. This is done by running the `configure` script. For a default installation simply enter

```
./configure
```

This script will run a number of tests to guess values for various system dependent variables and detect some quirks of your operating system, and finally will create several files in the build tree to record what it found. (You can also run `configure` in a directory outside the source tree if you want to keep the build directory separate.)

The default configuration will build the server and utilities, as well as all client applications and interfaces that require only a C compiler. All files will be installed under `/usr/local/pgsql` by default.

You can customize the build and installation process by supplying one or more of the following command line options to `configure`:

```
--prefix=PREFIX
```

Install all files under the directory `PREFIX` instead of `/usr/local/pgsql`. The actual files will be installed into various subdirectories; no files will ever be installed directly into the `PREFIX` directory.

If you have special needs, you can also customize the individual subdirectories with the following options.

```
--exec-prefix=EXEC-PREFIX
```

You can install architecture-dependent files under a different prefix, `EXEC-PREFIX`, than what `PREFIX` was set to. This can be useful to share architecture-independent files between hosts. If you omit this, then `EXEC-PREFIX` is set equal to `PREFIX` and both architecture-dependent and independent files will be installed under the same tree, which is probably what you want.

`--bindir=DIRECTORY`

Specifies the directory for executable programs. The default is `EXEC-PREFIX/bin`, which normally means `/usr/local/pgsql/bin`.

`--datadir=DIRECTORY`

Sets the directory for read-only data files used by the installed programs. The default is `PREFIX/share`. Note that this has nothing to do with where your database files will be placed.

`--sysconfdir=DIRECTORY`

The directory for various configuration files, `PREFIX/etc` by default.

`--libdir=DIRECTORY`

The location to install libraries and dynamically loadable modules. The default is `EXEC-PREFIX/lib`.

`--includedir=DIRECTORY`

The directory for installing C and C++ header files. The default is `PREFIX/include`.

`--docdir=DIRECTORY`

Documentation files, except “man” pages, will be installed into this directory. The default is `PREFIX/doc`.

`--mandir=DIRECTORY`

The man pages that come with PostgreSQL will be installed under this directory, in their respective `manx` subdirectories. The default is `PREFIX/man`.

**Note:** Care has been taken to make it possible to install PostgreSQL into shared installation locations (such as `/usr/local/include`) without interfering with the namespace of the rest of the system. First, the string “`/postgresql`” is automatically appended to `datadir`, `sysconfdir`, and `docdir`, unless the fully expanded directory name already contains the string “`postgres`” or “`pgsql`”. For example, if you choose `/usr/local` as prefix, the documentation will be installed in `/usr/local/doc/postgresql`, but if the prefix is `/opt/postgres`, then it will be in `/opt/postgres/doc`. The public C header files of the client interfaces are installed into `includedir` and are namespace-clean. The internal header files and the server header files are installed into private directories under `includedir`. See the *Programmer's Guide* for information about how to get at the header files for each interface. Finally, a private subdirectory will also be created, if appropriate, under `libdir` for dynamically loadable modules.

`--with-includes=DIRECTORIES`

`DIRECTORIES` is a colon-separated list of directories that will be added to the list the compiler searches for header files. If you have optional packages (such as GNU Readline) installed in a non-standard location, you have to use this option and probably also the corresponding `--with-libraries` option.

Example: `--with-includes=/opt/gnu/include:/usr/sup/include`.

`--with-libraries=DIRECTORIES`

*DIRECTORIES* is a colon-separated list of directories to search for libraries. You will probably have to use this option (and the corresponding `--with-includes` option) if you have packages installed in non-standard locations.

Example: `--with-libraries=/opt/gnu/lib:/usr/sup/lib`.

`--enable-recode`

Enables single-byte character set recode support. See Section 7.3 about this feature. Note that a more general form of character set conversion is supported in the default configuration; this feature is obsolete.

`--enable-nls[=LANGUAGES]`

Enables Native Language Support (NLS), that is, the ability to display a program's messages in a language other than English. *LANGUAGES* is a space separated list of codes of the languages that you want supported, for example `--enable-nls='de fr'`. (The intersection between your list and the set of actually provided translations will be computed automatically.) If you do not specify a list, then all available translations are installed.

To use this option, you will need an implementation of the gettext API; see above.

`--with-pgport=NUMBER`

Set *NUMBER* as the default port number for server and clients. The default is 5432. The port can always be changed later on, but if you specify it here then both server and clients will have the same default compiled in, which can be very convenient. Usually the only good reason to select a non-default value is if you intend to run multiple PostgreSQL servers on the same machine.

`--with-perl`

Build the PL/Perl server-side language.

`--with-python`

Build the Python interface module and the PL/Python server-side language. You need to have root access to be able to install the Python module at its default place (`/usr/lib/pythonx.Y`).

`--with-tcl`

Build components that require Tcl/Tk, which are `libpgtcl`, `pgtclsh`, `pgtksh`, and `PL/Tcl`. But see below about `--without-tk`.

`--without-tk`

If you specify `--with-tcl` and this option, then the program that requires Tk (`pgtksh`) will be excluded.

`--with-tclconfig=DIRECTORY`

`--with-tkconfig=DIRECTORY`

Tcl/Tk installs the files `tclConfig.sh` and `tkConfig.sh`, which contain configuration information needed to build modules interfacing to Tcl or Tk. These files are normally found automatically at their well-known locations, but if you want to use a different version of Tcl or Tk you can specify the directory in which to find them.

`--with-java`

Build the JDBC driver and associated Java packages.

`--with-krb4[=DIRECTORY]`

`--with-krb5[=DIRECTORY]`

Build with support for Kerberos authentication. You can use either Kerberos version 4 or 5, but not both. The *DIRECTORY* argument specifies the root directory of the Kerberos installation; `/usr/athena` is assumed as default. If the relevant header files and libraries are not under a common parent directory, then you must use the `--with-includes` and `--with-libraries` options in addition to this option. If, on the other hand, the required files are in a location that is searched by default (e.g., `/usr/lib`), then you can leave off the argument.

`configure` will check for the required header files and libraries to make sure that your Kerberos installation is sufficient before proceeding.

`--with-krb-srvnam=NAME`

The name of the Kerberos service principal. `postgres` is the default. There's probably no reason to change this.

`--with-openssl[=DIRECTORY]`

Build with support for SSL (encrypted) connections. This requires the OpenSSL package to be installed. The *DIRECTORY* argument specifies the root directory of the OpenSSL installation; the default is `/usr/local/ssl`.

`configure` will check for the required header files and libraries to make sure that your OpenSSL installation is sufficient before proceeding.

`--with-pam`

Build with PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules) support.

`--without-readline`

Prevents the use of the Readline library. This disables command-line editing and history in `psql`, so it is not recommended.

`--without-zlib`

Prevents the use of the Zlib library. This disables compression support in `pg_dump`. This option is only intended for those rare systems where this library is not available.

`--enable-debug`

Compiles all programs and libraries with debugging symbols. This means that you can run the programs through a debugger to analyze problems. This enlarges the size of the installed executables considerably, and on non-GCC compilers it usually also disables compiler optimization, causing slowdowns. However, having the symbols available is extremely helpful for dealing with any problems that may arise. Currently, this option is recommended for production installations only if you use GCC. But you should always have it on if you are doing development work or running a beta version.

`--enable-cassert`

Enables *assertion* checks in the server, which test for many “can't happen” conditions. This is invaluable for code development purposes, but the tests slow things down a little. Also, having the tests turned on won't necessarily enhance the stability of your server! The assertion checks are not categorized for severity, and so what might be a relatively harmless bug will still lead

to server restarts if it triggers an assertion failure. Currently, this option is not recommended for production use, but you should have it on for development work or when running a beta version.

`--enable-depend`

Enables automatic dependency tracking. With this option, the makefiles are set up so that all affected object files will be rebuilt when any header file is changed. This is useful if you are doing development work, but is just wasted overhead if you intend only to compile once and install. At present, this option will work only if you use GCC.

If you prefer a C compiler different from the one `configure` picks then you can set the environment variable `CC` to the program of your choice. By default, `configure` will pick `gcc` unless this is inappropriate for the platform. Similarly, you can override the default compiler flags with the `CFLAGS` variable.

You can specify environment variables on the `configure` command line, for example:

```
./configure CC=/opt/bin/gcc CFLAGS='-O2 -pipe'
```

## 2. Build

To start the build, type

```
make
```

(Remember to use GNU make.) The build may take anywhere from 5 minutes to half an hour depending on your hardware. The last line displayed should be

```
All of PostgreSQL is successfully made. Ready to install.
```

## 3. Regression Tests

If you want to test the newly built server before you install it, you can run the regression tests at this point. The regression tests are a test suite to verify that PostgreSQL runs on your machine in the way the developers expected it to. Type

```
make check
```

(This won't work as root; do it as an unprivileged user.) It is possible that some tests fail, due to differences in error message wording or floating point results. Chapter 13 contains detailed information about interpreting the test results. You can repeat this test at any later time by issuing the same command.

## 4. Installing The Files

**Note:** If you are upgrading an existing system and are going to install the new files over the old ones, then you should have backed up your data and shut down the old server by now, as explained in Section 1.4 above.

To install PostgreSQL enter

```
gmake install
```

This will install files into the directories that were specified in step 1. Make sure that you have appropriate permissions to write into that area. Normally you need to do this step as root. Alternatively, you could create the target directories in advance and arrange for appropriate permissions to be granted.

You can use `gmake install-strip` instead of `gmake install` to strip the executable files and libraries as they are installed. This will save some space. If you built with debugging support, stripping will effectively remove the debugging support, so it should only be done if debugging is no longer needed. `install-strip` tries to do a reasonable job saving space, but it does not have perfect knowledge of how to strip every unneeded byte from an executable file, so if you want to save all the disk space you possibly can, you will have to do manual work.

If you built the Python interfaces and you were not the root user when you executed the above command then that part of the installation probably failed. In that case you should become the root user and then do

```
gmake -C src/interfaces/python install
```

If you do not have superuser access you are on your own: you can still take the required files and place them in other directories where Python can find them, but how to do that is left as an exercise.

The standard installation provides only the header files needed for client application development. If you plan to do any server-side program development (such as custom functions or data types written in C), then you may want to install the entire PostgreSQL include tree into your target include directory. To do that, enter

```
gmake install-all-headers
```

This adds a megabyte or two to the installation footprint, and is only useful if you don't plan to keep the whole source tree around for reference. (If you do, you can just use the source's include directory when building server-side software.)

**Client-only installation:** If you want to install only the client applications and interface libraries, then you can use these commands:

```
gmake -C src/bin install  
gmake -C src/include install  
gmake -C src/interfaces install  
gmake -C doc install
```

**Uninstallation:** To undo the installation use the command `gmake uninstall`. However, this will not remove any created directories.

**Cleaning:** After the installation you can make room by removing the built files from the source tree with the command `gmake clean`. This will preserve the files made by the configure program, so that you can rebuild everything with `gmake` later on. To reset the source tree to the state in which it was distributed, use `gmake distclean`. If you are going to build for several platforms from the same source tree you must do this and re-configure for each build.

If you perform a build and then discover that your configure options were wrong, or if you change anything that configure investigates (for example, software upgrades), then it's a good idea to do `gmake distclean` before reconfiguring and rebuilding. Without this, your changes in configuration choices may not propagate everywhere they need to.

## 1.6. Post-Installation Setup

### 1.6.1. Shared Libraries

On some systems that have shared libraries (which most systems do) you need to tell your system how to find the newly installed shared libraries. The systems on which this is *not* necessary include BSD/OS, FreeBSD, HP-UX, IRIX, Linux, NetBSD, OpenBSD, Tru64 UNIX (formerly Digital UNIX), and Solaris.

The method to set the shared library search path varies between platforms, but the most widely usable method is to set the environment variable `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` like so: In Bourne shells (`sh`, `ksh`, `bash`, `zsh`)

```
LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/local/pgsql/lib
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

or in `csh` or `tcsh`

```
setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /usr/local/pgsql/lib
```

Replace `/usr/local/pgsql/lib` with whatever you set `--libdir` to in step 1. You should put these commands into a shell start-up file such as `/etc/profile` or `~/.bash_profile`. Some good information about the caveats associated with this method can be found at <http://www.visi.com/~barr/ldpath.html>.

On some systems it might be preferable to set the environment variable `LD_RUN_PATH` *before* building.

On Cygwin, put the library directory in the `PATH` or move the `.dll` files into the `bin/` directory.

If in doubt, refer to the manual pages of your system (perhaps `ld.so` or `rld`). If you later on get a message like

```
psql: error in loading shared libraries
libpq.so.2.1: cannot open shared object file: No such file or directory
```

then this step was necessary. Simply take care of it then.

If you are on BSD/OS, Linux, or SunOS 4 and you have root access you can run

```
/sbin/ldconfig /usr/local/pgsql/lib
```

(or equivalent directory) after installation to enable the run-time linker to find the shared libraries faster. Refer to the manual page of `ldconfig` for more information. On FreeBSD, NetBSD, and OpenBSD the command is

```
/sbin/ldconfig -m /usr/local/pgsql/lib
```

instead. Other systems are not known to have an equivalent command.

### 1.6.2. Environment Variables

If you installed into `/usr/local/pgsql` or some other location that is not searched for programs by default, you should add `/usr/local/pgsql/bin` (or whatever you set `--bindir` to in step 1) into your `PATH`. Strictly speaking, this is not necessary, but it will make the use of PostgreSQL much more convenient.

To do this, add the following to your shell start-up file, such as `~/.bash_profile` (or `/etc/profile`, if you want it to affect every user):

```
PATH=/usr/local/pgsql/bin:$PATH
export PATH
```

If you are using `csh` or `tcsh`, then use this command:

```
set path = ( /usr/local/pgsql/bin $path )
```

To enable your system to find the man documentation, you need to add a line like the following to a shell start-up file unless you installed into a location that is searched by default.

```
MANPATH=/usr/local/pgsql/man:$MANPATH
export MANPATH
```

The environment variables `PGHOST` and `PGPORT` specify to client applications the host and port of the database server, overriding the compiled-in defaults. If you are going to run client applications remotely then it is convenient if every user that plans to use the database sets `PGHOST`. This is not required, however: the settings can be communicated via command line options to most client programs.

## 1.7. Supported Platforms

PostgreSQL has been verified by the developer community to work on the platforms listed below. A supported platform generally means that PostgreSQL builds and installs according to these instructions and that the regression tests pass.

**Note:** If you are having problems with the installation on a supported platform, please write to `<pgsql-bugs@postgresql.org>` or `<pgsql-ports@postgresql.org>`, not to the people listed here.

OS	Processor	Version	Reported	Remarks
AIX	RS6000	7.3	2002-11-12, Andreas Zeugswetter ( <code>&lt;ZeugswetterA@spardat.at&gt;</code> )	see also <code>doc/FAQ_AIX</code>
BSD/OS	x86	7.3	2002-10-25, Bruce Momjian ( <code>&lt;pgman@candle.pha.pa.us&gt;</code> )	4.2

OS	Processor	Version	Reported	Remarks
FreeBSD	Alpha	7.3	2002-11-13, Chris Kings-Lynne (<chriskl@familyhealth.com.au>)	
FreeBSD	x86	7.3	2002-10-29, 3.3, Nigel J. Andrews (<nandrews@investsystems.co.uk>), 4.7, Larry Rosenman (<ler@lerctr.org>), 5.0, Sean Chittenden (<sean@chittenden.org>)	
HP-UX	PA-RISC	7.3	2002-10-28, 10.20 Tom Lane (<tgl@sss.pgh.pa.us>), 11.00, 11.11, 32 & 64 bit, Giles Lean (<giles@nemeton.com.au>)	gcc and cc; see also doc/FAQ_HPUX
IRIX	MIPS	7.3	2002-10-27, Ian Barwick (<barwick@gmx.net>)	Irix64 Komma 6.5
Linux	Alpha	7.3	2002-10-28, Magnus Naeslund (<mag@fbab.net>)	2.4.19-pre6
Linux	PlayStation 2	7.3	2002-11-19, Permaine Cheung (<pcheung@redhat.com>)	#undef HAS_TEST_AND_SET, remove slock_t typedef
Linux	PPC74xx	7.3	2002-10-26, Tom Lane (<tgl@sss.pgh.pa.us>)	bye 2.2.18; Apple G3
Linux	S/390	7.3	2002-11-22, Permaine Cheung (<pcheung@redhat.com>)	both s390 and s390x (32 and 64 bit)
Linux	Sparc	7.3	2002-10-26, Doug McNaught (<doug@mcnaught.org>)	3.0

OS	Processor	Version	Reported	Remarks
Linux	x86	7.3	2002-10-26, Alvaro Herrera (<alvherre@dcc.uchile.cl>)	2.4
MacOS X	PPC	7.3	2002-10-28, 10.1, Tom Lane (<tgl@sss.pgh.pa.us>), 10.2.1, Adam Witney (<awitney@sghms.ac.uk>)	
NetBSD	arm32	7.3	2002-11-19, Patrick Welche (<prlw1@newn.cam.ac.uk>)	1.6
NetBSD	x86	7.3	2002-11-14, Patrick Welche (<prlw1@newn.cam.ac.uk>)	1.6
OpenBSD	Sparc	7.3	2002-11-17, Christopher Kings-Lynne (<chriskl@familyhealth.com.au>)	3.2
OpenBSD	x86	7.3	2002-11-14, 3.1 Magnus Naeslund (<mag@fbab.net>), 3.2 Christopher Kings-Lynne (<chriskl@familyhealth.com.au>)	
SCO OpenServer 5	x86	7.3.1	2002-12-11, Shibashish Satpathy (<shib@postmark.net>)	5.0.4, gcc; see also doc/FAQ_SCO
Solaris	Sparc	7.3	2002-10-28, Andrew Sullivan (<andrew@libertyinc.com>)	Solaris 7 & 8; see also doc/FAQ_Solaris
Solaris	x86	7.3	2002-11-20, Martin Renters (<martin@datafax.com>)	5.8; see also doc/FAQ_Solaris

OS	Processor	Version	Reported	Remarks
Tru64 UNIX	Alpha	7.3	2002-11-05, Alessio Bragadini ( <a href="mailto:alessio@albourne.com">&lt;alessio@albourne.com&gt;</a> )	
UnixWare	x86	7.3	2002-11-01, 7.1.3 Larry Rosenman ( <a href="mailto:ler@lerctr.org">&lt;ler@lerctr.org&gt;</a> ), 7.1.1 and 7.1.2(8.0.0) Olivier Prenant ( <a href="mailto:ohp@pyrenet.fr">&lt;ohp@pyrenet.fr&gt;</a> )	see also doc/FAQ_SCO
Windows	x86	7.3	2002-10-29, Dave Page ( <a href="mailto:dpage@vale-housing.co.uk">&lt;dpage@vale-housing.co.uk&gt;</a> ), Jason Tishler ( <a href="mailto:jason@tishler.net">&lt;jason@tishler.net&gt;</a> )	with Cygwin; see doc/FAQ_MSWIN
Windows	x86	7.3	2002-11-05, Dave Page ( <a href="mailto:dpage@vale-housing.co.uk">&lt;dpage@vale-housing.co.uk&gt;</a> )	native is client-side only; see Chapter 2

**Unsupported Platforms:** The following platforms are either known not to work, or they used to work in a previous release and we did not receive explicit confirmation of a successful test with version 7.3 at the time this list was compiled. We include these here to let you know that these platforms *could* be supported if given some attention.

OS	Processor	Version	Reported	Remarks
BeOS	x86	7.2	2001-11-29, Cyril Velter ( <a href="mailto:cyril.velter@libertysurf.fr">&lt;cyril.velter@libertysurf.fr&gt;</a> )	needs updates to semaphore code
DG/UX 5.4R4.11	m88k	6.3	1998-03-01, Brian E Gallew ( <a href="mailto:geek+@cmu.edu">&lt;geek+@cmu.edu&gt;</a> )	no recent reports
Linux	armv4l	7.2	2001-12-10, Mark Knox ( <a href="mailto:segfault@hardline.org">&lt;segfault@hardline.org&gt;</a> )	2.2.x

OS	Processor	Version	Reported	Remarks
Linux	MIPS	7.2	2001-11-15, Hisao Shibuya ( <a href="mailto:shibuya@alpha.or.jp">shibuya@alpha.or.jp</a> )	2.0.x; Cobalt Qube2
MkLinux DR1	PPC750	7.0	2001-04-03, Tatsuo Ishii ( <a href="mailto:t-ishii@sra.co.jp">t-ishii@sra.co.jp</a> )	7.1 needs OS update?
NetBSD	Alpha	7.2	2001-11-20, Thomas Thai ( <a href="mailto:tom@minnesota.com">tom@minnesota.com</a> )	1.5W
NetBSD	m68k	7.0	2000-04-10, Henry B. Hotz ( <a href="mailto:hotz@jpl.nasa.gov">hotz@jpl.nasa.gov</a> )	Mac 8xx
NetBSD	MIPS	7.2.1	2002-06-13, Warwick Hunter ( <a href="mailto:whunter@agile.tv">whunter@agile.tv</a> )	1.5.3
NetBSD	PPC	7.2	2001-11-28, Bill Studenmund ( <a href="mailto:wrstuden@netbsd.org">wrstuden@netbsd.org</a> )	1.5
NetBSD	Sparc	7.2	2001-12-03, Matthew Green ( <a href="mailto:mrg@eterna.com.au">mrg@eterna.com.au</a> )	32- and 64-bit builds
NetBSD	VAX	7.1	2001-03-30, Tom I. Helbekkmo ( <a href="mailto:tih@kpnqwest.no">tih@kpnqwest.no</a> )	1.5
NeXTSTEP	x86	6.x	1998-03-01, David Wetzel ( <a href="mailto:dave@turbocat.de">dave@turbocat.de</a> )	bit rot suspected
QNX 4 RTOS	x86	7.2	2001-12-10, Bernd Tegge ( <a href="mailto:tegge@repas-aeg.de">tegge@repas-aeg.de</a> )	needs updates to semaphore code; see also doc/FAQ_QNX4

OS	Processor	Version	Reported	Remarks
QNX RTOS v6	x86	7.2	2001-11-20, Igor Kovalenko (<Igor.Kovalenko@xerox.com>)	patches available in archives, but too late for 7.2a
SunOS 4	Sparc	7.2	2001-12-04, Tatsuo Ishii (<t-ishii@sra.co.jp>)	
System V R4	m88k	6.2.1	1998-03-01, Doug Winterburn (<dlw@seavme.xroads.com>)	needs new TAS spinlock code
System V R4	MIPS	6.4	1998-10-28, Frank Ridderbusch (<ridderbusch.pad@sni.de>)	no recent reports
Ultrix	MIPS	7.1	2001-03-26	TAS spinlock code not detected
Ultrix	VAX	6.x	1998-03-01	

## Chapter 2. Installation on Windows

Although PostgreSQL is written for Unix-like operating systems, the C client library (libpq) and the interactive terminal (psql) can be compiled natively under Windows. The makefiles included in the source distribution are written for Microsoft Visual C++ and will probably not work with other systems. It should be possible to compile the libraries manually in other cases.

**Tip:** If you are using Windows 98 or newer you can build and use all of PostgreSQL “the Unix way” if you install the Cygwin toolkit first. In that case see Chapter 1.

To build everything that you can on Windows, change into the `src` directory and type the command

```
nmake /f win32.mak
```

This assumes that you have Visual C++ in your path.

The following files will be built:

```
interfaces\libpq\Release\libpq.dll
```

The dynamically linkable frontend library

```
interfaces\libpq\Release\libpqdll.lib
```

Import library to link your program to libpq.dll

```
interfaces\libpq\Release\libpq.lib
```

Static library version of the frontend library

```
bin\psql\Release\psql.exe
```

The PostgreSQL interactive terminal

The only file that really needs to be installed is the `libpq.dll` library. This file should in most cases be placed in the `WINNT\SYSTEM32` directory (or in `WINDOWS\SYSTEM` on a Windows 95/98/ME system). If this file is installed using a setup program, it should be installed with version checking using the `VERSIONINFO` resource included in the file, to ensure that a newer version of the library is not overwritten.

If you plan to do development using libpq on this machine, you will have to add the `src\include` and `src\interfaces\libpq` subdirectories of the source tree to the include path in your compilers settings.

To use the libraries, you must add the `libpqdll.lib` file to your project. (In Visual C++, just right-click on the project and choose to add it.)

# Chapter 3. Server Run-time Environment

This chapter discusses how to set up and run the database server and the interactions with the operating system.

## 3.1. The PostgreSQL User Account

As with any other server daemon that is connected to outside world, it is advisable to run PostgreSQL under a separate user account. This user account should only own the data that is managed by the server, and should not be shared with other daemons. (For example, using the user “nobody” is a bad idea.) It is not advisable to install executables owned by this user because compromised systems could then modify their own binaries.

To add a Unix user account to your system, look for a command `useradd` or `adduser`. The user name `postgres` is often used but is by no means required.

## 3.2. Creating a Database Cluster

Before you can do anything, you must initialize a database storage area on disk. We call this a *database cluster*. (SQL uses the term *catalog cluster* instead.) A database cluster is a collection of databases is accessible by a single instance of a running database server. After initialization, a database cluster will contain a database named `template1`. As the name suggests, this will be used as a template for subsequently created databases; it should not be used for actual work. (See Chapter 5 for information about creating databases.)

In file system terms, a database cluster will be a single directory under which all data will be stored. We call this the *data directory* or *data area*. It is completely up to you where you choose to store your data. There is no default, although locations such as `/usr/local/pgsql/data` or `/var/lib/pgsql/data` are popular. To initialize a database cluster, use the command `initdb`, which is installed with PostgreSQL. The desired file system location of your database system is indicated by the `-D` option, for example

```
$ initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

Note that you must execute this command while logged into the PostgreSQL user account, which is described in the previous section.

**Tip:** As an alternative to the `-D` option, you can set the environment variable `PGDATA`.

`initdb` will attempt to create the directory you specify if it does not already exist. It is likely that it will not have the permission to do so (if you followed our advice and created an unprivileged account). In that case you should create the directory yourself (as root) and change the owner to be the PostgreSQL user. Here is how this might be done:

```
root# mkdir /usr/local/pgsql/data
root# chown postgres /usr/local/pgsql/data
root# su postgres
postgres$ initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

`initdb` will refuse to run if the data directory looks like it has already been initialized.

Because the data directory contains all the data stored in the database, it is essential that it be secured from unauthorized access. `initdb` therefore revokes access permissions from everyone but the PostgreSQL user.

However, while the directory contents are secure, the default client authentication setup allows any local user to connect to the database and even become the database superuser. If you don't trust other local users, we recommend you use `initdb`'s `-W` or `--pwprompt` option to assign a password to the database superuser. After `initdb`, modify the `pg_hba.conf` file to use `md5` or `password` instead of `trust` authentication *before* you start the server for the first time. (Other, approaches include using `ident` authentication or file system permissions to restrict connections. See Chapter 6 for more information.)

`initdb` also initializes the default locale for the database cluster. Normally, it will just take the locale settings in the environment and apply them to the initialized database. It is possible to specify a different locale for the database; more information about that can be found in Section 7.1. One surprise you might encounter while running `initdb` is a notice similar to this:

```
The database cluster will be initialized with locale de_DE.
This locale setting will prevent the use of indexes for pattern matching
operations.  If that is a concern, rerun initdb with the collation order
set to "C".  For more information see the Administrator's Guide.
```

This is intended to warn you that the currently selected locale will cause indexes to be sorted in an order that prevents them from being used for `LIKE` and regular-expression searches. If you need good performance in such searches, you should set your current locale to `C` and re-run `initdb`, e.g., by running `initdb --lc-collate=C`. The sort order used within a particular database cluster is set by `initdb` and cannot be changed later, short of dumping all data, rerunning `initdb`, and reloading the data. So it's important to make this choice correctly the first time.

### 3.3. Starting the Database Server

Before anyone can access the database, you must start the database server. The database server is called *postmaster*. The *postmaster* must know where to find the data it is supposed to use. This is done with the `-D` option. Thus, the simplest way to start the server is:

```
$ postmaster -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

which will leave the server running in the foreground. This must be done while logged into the PostgreSQL user account. Without `-D`, the server will try to use the data directory in the environment variable `PGDATA`. If neither of these succeed, it will fail.

To start the *postmaster* in the background, use the usual shell syntax:

```
$ postmaster -D /usr/local/pgsql/data > logfile 2>&1 &
```

It is an important to store the server's `stdout` and `stderr` output somewhere, as shown above. It will help for auditing purposes and to diagnose problems. (See Section 8.4 for a more thorough discussion of log file handling.)

The postmaster also takes a number of other command line options. For more information, see the reference page and Section 3.4 below. In particular, in order for the server to accept TCP/IP connections (rather than just Unix domain socket ones), you must specify the `-i` option.

This shell syntax can get tedious quickly. Therefore the shell script wrapper `pg_ctl` is provided to simplify some tasks. For example:

```
pg_ctl start -l logfile
```

will start the server in the background and put the output into the named log file. The `-D` option has the same meaning here as in the postmaster. `pg_ctl` is also capable of stopping the server.

Normally, you will want to start the database server when the computer boots. Autostart scripts are operating system-specific. There are a few distributed with PostgreSQL in the `/contrib/start-scripts` directory. This may require root privileges.

Different systems have different conventions for starting up daemons at boot time. Many systems have a file `/etc/rc.local` or `/etc/rc.d/rc.local`. Others use `rc.d` directories. Whatever you do, the server must be run by the PostgreSQL user account *and not by root* or any other user. Therefore you probably should form your commands using `su -c '...' postgres`. For example:

```
su -c 'pg_ctl start -D /usr/local/pgsql/data -l serverlog' postgres
```

Here are a few more operating system specific suggestions. (Always replace these with the proper installation directory and the user name.)

- For FreeBSD, look at the file `contrib/start-scripts/freebsd` in the PostgreSQL source distribution.
- On OpenBSD, add the following lines to the file `/etc/rc.local`:

```
if [ -x /usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl -a -x /usr/local/pgsql/bin/postmaster ]; then
    su - -c '/usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl start -l /var/postgresql/log -s' postgres
    echo -n ' postgresql'
fi
```

- On Linux systems either add

```
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl start -l logfile -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

to `/etc/rc.d/rc.local` or look at the file `contrib/start-scripts/linux` in the PostgreSQL source distribution.

- On NetBSD, either use the FreeBSD or Linux start scripts, depending on preference.
- On Solaris, create a file called `/etc/init.d/postgresql` which should contain the following line:

```
su - postgres -c "/usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl start -l logfile -D /usr/local/pgsql/data"
```

Then, create a symbolic link to it in `/etc/rc3.d` as `S99postgresql`.

While the postmaster is running, its PID is in the file `postmaster.pid` in the data directory. This is used to prevent multiple postmasters running in the same data directory, and can also be used for shutting down the postmaster.

### 3.3.1. Server Start-up Failures

There are several common reasons the postmaster might fail to start. Check the postmaster's log file, or start it by hand (without redirecting standard output or standard error) and see what error messages appear. Some of the error messages are self-explanatory, but some are not, as shown below:

```
FATAL: StreamServerPort: bind() failed: Address already in use
       Is another postmaster already running on that port?
```

This usually means just what it suggests: you tried to start another postmaster on the same port where one is already running. However, if the kernel error message is not `Address already in use` or some variant of that, there may be a different problem. For example, trying to start a postmaster on a reserved port number may draw something like:

```
$ postmaster -i -p 666
FATAL: StreamServerPort: bind() failed: Permission denied
       Is another postmaster already running on that port?
```

A message like:

```
IpMemoryCreate: shmget(key=5440001, size=83918612, 01600) failed: Invalid ar-
gument
FATAL 1: ShmemCreate: cannot create region
```

probably means your kernel's limit on the size of shared memory is smaller than the buffer area PostgreSQL is trying to create (83918612 bytes in this example). Or it could mean that you don't have System V-style shared memory support configured into your kernel at all. As a temporary workaround, you can try starting the postmaster with a smaller-than-normal number of buffers (`-B` switch). You will eventually want to reconfigure your kernel to increase the allowed shared memory size. You may see this message when trying to start multiple postmasters on the same machine if their total space requested exceeds the kernel limit.

An error like:

```
IpSemaphoreCreate: semget(key=5440026, num=16, 01600) failed: No space left on de-
vice
```

does *not* mean you've run out of disk space. It means your kernel's limit on the number of System V semaphores is smaller than the number PostgreSQL wants to create. As above, you may be able to work around the problem by starting the postmaster with a reduced number of allowed connections (`-N` switch), but you'll eventually want to increase the kernel limit.

If you get an "illegal system call" error, it is likely that shared memory or semaphores are not supported in your kernel at all. In that case your only option is to reconfigure the kernel to enable these features.

Details about configuring System V IPC facilities are given in Section 3.5.1.

### 3.3.2. Client Connection Problems

Although the error conditions possible on the client side are quite varied and application-dependent, a few of them might be directly related to how the server was started up. Conditions other than those shown below should be documented with the respective client application.

```
psql: could not connect to server: Connection refused
        Is the server running on host server.joe.com and accepting
        TCP/IP connections on port 5432?
```

This is the generic “I couldn’t find a server to talk to” failure. It looks like the above when TCP/IP communication is attempted. A common mistake is to forget the `-i` option to allow the postmaster to accept TCP/IP connections.

Alternatively, you’ll get this when attempting Unix-socket communication to a local postmaster:

```
psql: could not connect to server: Connection refused
        Is the server running locally and accepting
        connections on Unix domain socket "/tmp/.s.PGSQL.5432"?
```

The last line is useful in verifying that the client is trying to connect to the right place. If there is in fact no postmaster running there, the kernel error message will typically be either `Connection refused` or `No such file or directory`, as illustrated. (It is important to realize that `Connection refused` in this context does *not* mean that the postmaster got your connection request and rejected it -- that case will produce a different message, as shown in Section 6.3.) Other error messages such as `Connection timed out` may indicate more fundamental problems, like lack of network connectivity.

## 3.4. Run-time Configuration

There are a lot of configuration parameters that affect the behavior of the database system. Here we describe how to set them and the following subsections will discuss each in detail.

All parameter names are case-insensitive. Every parameter takes a value of one of the four types: Boolean, integer, floating point, and string. Boolean values are `ON`, `OFF`, `TRUE`, `FALSE`, `YES`, `NO`, `1`, `0` (case-insensitive) or any non-ambiguous prefix of these.

One way to set these options is to edit the file `postgresql.conf` in the data directory. (A default file is installed there.) An example of what this file might look like is:

```
# This is a comment
log_connections = yes
syslog = 2
search_path = '$user, public'
```

As you see, options are one per line. The equal sign between name and value is optional. Whitespace is insignificant and blank lines are ignored. Hash marks (“#”) introduce comments anywhere. Parameter values that are not simple identifiers or numbers should be single-quoted.

The configuration file is reread whenever the postmaster receives a `SIGHUP` signal (which is most easily sent by means of `pg_ctl reload`). The postmaster also propagates this signal to all currently running

backend processes so that existing sessions also get the new value. Alternatively, you can send the signal to a single backend process directly.

A second way to set these configuration parameters is to give them as a command line option to the postmaster, such as:

```
postmaster -c log_connections=yes -c syslog=2
```

which would have the same effect as the previous example. Command-line options override any conflicting settings in `postgresql.conf`.

Occasionally it is also useful to give a command line option to one particular backend session only. The environment variable `PGOPTIONS` can be used for this purpose on the client side:

```
env PGOPTIONS='-c geqo=off' psql
```

(This works for any libpq-based client application, not just `psql`.) Note that this won't work for options that are fixed when the server is started, such as the port number.

Some options can be changed in individual SQL sessions with the `SET` command, for example:

```
=> SET ENABLE_SEQSCAN TO OFF;
```

See the SQL command language reference for details on the syntax.

Furthermore, it is possible to assign a set of option settings to a user or a database. Whenever a session is started, the default settings for the user and database involved are loaded. The commands `ALTER DATABASE` and `ALTER USER`, respectively, are used to configure these settings. Such per-database settings override anything received from the postmaster or the configuration file, and in turn are overridden by per-user settings.

### 3.4.1. `pg_settings`

The `pg_settings` virtual table allows display and update of current session run-time parameters. There is one entry for each of the available parameters provided by `SHOW ALL`. But it is in a form that allows it to be joined with other relations and have a selection criteria applied.

An `UPDATE` performed on `pg_settings` is equivalent to executing the `SET` command on that named parameter. The change only affects the value used by the current session. If an `UPDATE` is issued within a transaction that is later aborted, the effects of the `UPDATE` command disappear when the transaction is rolled back. Once the surrounding transaction is committed, the effects will persist until the end of the session, unless overridden by another `UPDATE` or `SET`.

**Table 3-1. `pg_settings` Columns**

Name	Type	Description
name	text	The name of a current session run-time parameter
setting	text	The value of a current session run-time parameter

### 3.4.2. Planner and Optimizer Tuning

`CPU_INDEX_TUPLE_COST` (floating point)

Sets the query optimizer's estimate of the cost of processing each index tuple during an index scan. This is measured as a fraction of the cost of a sequential page fetch.

`CPU_OPERATOR_COST` (floating point)

Sets the optimizer's estimate of the cost of processing each operator in a `WHERE` clause. This is measured as a fraction of the cost of a sequential page fetch.

`CPU_TUPLE_COST` (floating point)

Sets the query optimizer's estimate of the cost of processing each tuple during a query. This is measured as a fraction of the cost of a sequential page fetch.

`DEFAULT_STATISTICS_TARGET` (integer)

Sets the default statistics target for table columns that have not had a column-specific target set via `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS`. Larger values increase the time needed to do `ANALYZE`, but may improve the quality of the planner's estimates.

`EFFECTIVE_CACHE_SIZE` (floating point)

Sets the optimizer's assumption about the effective size of the disk cache (that is, the portion of the kernel's disk cache that will be used for PostgreSQL data files). This is measured in disk pages, which are normally 8 kB each.

`ENABLE_HASHJOIN` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of hash-join plan types. The default is on. This is used for debugging the query planner.

`ENABLE_INDEXSCAN` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of index-scan plan types. The default is on. This is used to debugging the query planner.

`ENABLE_MERGEJOIN` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of merge-join plan types. The default is on. This is used for debugging the query planner.

`ENABLE_NESTLOOP` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of nested-loop join plans. It's not possible to suppress nested-loop joins entirely, but turning this variable off discourages the planner from using one if there are other methods available. The default is on. This is used for debugging the query planner.

`ENABLE_SEQSCAN` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of sequential scan plan types. It's not possible to suppress sequential scans entirely, but turning this variable off discourages the planner from using one if there are other methods available. The default is on. This is used for debugging the query planner.

ENABLE\_SORT (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of explicit sort steps. It's not possible to suppress explicit sorts entirely, but turning this variable off discourages the planner from using one if there are other methods available. The default is on. This is used for debugging the query planner.

ENABLE\_TIDSCAN (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of TID scan plan types. The default is on. This is used for debugging the query planner.

GEQO (boolean)

Enables or disables genetic query optimization, which is an algorithm that attempts to do query planning without exhaustive searching. This is on by default. See also the various other GEQO\_ settings.

GEQO\_EFFORT (integer)

GEQO\_GENERATIONS (integer)

GEQO\_POOL\_SIZE (integer)

GEQO\_RANDOM\_SEED (integer)

GEQO\_SELECTION\_BIAS (floating point)

Various tuning parameters for the genetic query optimization algorithm: The pool size is the number of individuals in one population. Valid values are between 128 and 1024. If it is set to 0 (the default) a pool size of  $2^{(QS+1)}$ , where QS is the number of FROM items in the query, is taken. The effort is used to calculate a default for generations. Valid values are between 1 and 80, 40 being the default. Generations specifies the number of iterations in the algorithm. The number must be a positive integer. If 0 is specified then  $Effort * \log_2(PoolSize)$  is used. The run time of the algorithm is roughly proportional to the sum of pool size and generations. The selection bias is the selective pressure within the population. Values can be from 1.50 to 2.00; the latter is the default. The random seed can be set to get reproducible results from the algorithm. If it is set to -1 then the algorithm behaves non-deterministically.

GEQO\_THRESHOLD (integer)

Use genetic query optimization to plan queries with at least this many FROM items involved. (Note that a JOIN construct counts as only one FROM item.) The default is 11. For simpler queries it is usually best to use the deterministic, exhaustive planner. This parameter also controls how hard the optimizer will try to merge subquery FROM clauses into the upper query.

RANDOM\_PAGE\_COST (floating point)

Sets the query optimizer's estimate of the cost of a nonsequentially fetched disk page. This is measured as a multiple of the cost of a sequential page fetch.

**Note:** Unfortunately, there is no well-defined method for determining ideal values for the family of "COST" variables that were just described. You are encouraged to experiment and share your findings.

### 3.4.3. Logging and Debugging

`SERVER_MIN_MESSAGES` (string)

This controls how much message detail is written to the server logs. Valid values are `DEBUG5`, `DEBUG4`, `DEBUG3`, `DEBUG2`, `DEBUG1`, `INFO`, `NOTICE`, `WARNING`, `ERROR`, `LOG`, `FATAL`, and `PANIC`. Later values send less detail to the logs. The default is `NOTICE`. Note that `LOG` has a different precedence here than in `CLIENT_MIN_MESSAGES`.

Here is a summary of the various message types:

`DEBUG[ 1-5 ]`

Provides information for use by developers.

`INFO`

Provides information implicitly requested by the user, e.g., during `VACUUM VERBOSE`.

`NOTICE`

Provides information that may be helpful to users, e.g., truncation of long identifiers and index creation as part of primary keys.

`WARNING`

Provides warnings to the user, e.g., `COMMIT` outside a transaction.

`ERROR`

Reports the error that caused a transaction to abort.

`LOG`

Reports information of interest to administrators, e.g., checkpoint activity.

`FATAL`

Reports why a backend session terminated.

`PANIC`

Reports why all backend sessions restarted.

`CLIENT_MIN_MESSAGES` (string)

This controls how much message detail is written to the client. Valid values are `DEBUG5`, `DEBUG4`, `DEBUG3`, `DEBUG2`, `DEBUG1`, `LOG`, `NOTICE`, `WARNING`, and `ERROR`. Later values send less information to the client. The default is `NOTICE`. Note that `LOG` has a different precedence here than in `SERVER_MIN_MESSAGES`. Also see that section for an explanation of the various values.

`DEBUG_ASSERTIONS` (boolean)

Turns on various assertion checks. This is a debugging aid. If you are experiencing strange problems or crashes you might want to turn this on, as it might expose programming mistakes. To use this option, the macro `USE_ASSERT_CHECKING` must be defined when PostgreSQL is built (accomplished by the configure option `--enable-cassert`). Note that `DEBUG_ASSERTIONS` defaults to on if PostgreSQL has been built with assertions enabled.

`DEBUG_PRINT_PARSE` (boolean)

`DEBUG_PRINT_REWRITTEN` (boolean)

`DEBUG_PRINT_PLAN` (boolean)

`DEBUG_PRETTY_PRINT` (boolean)

These flags enable various debugging output to be sent to the server log. For each executed query, print either the query text, the resulting parse tree, the query rewriter output, or the execution plan. `DEBUG_PRETTY_PRINT` indents these displays to produce a more readable but much longer output format.

`EXPLAIN_PRETTY_PRINT` (boolean)

Determines whether `EXPLAIN VERBOSE` uses the indented or non-indented format for displaying detailed query-tree dumps.

`HOSTNAME_LOOKUP` (boolean)

By default, connection logs only show the IP address of the connecting host. If you want it to show the host name you can turn this on, but depending on your host name resolution setup it might impose a non-negligible performance penalty. This option can only be set at server start.

`LOG_CONNECTIONS` (boolean)

This outputs a line to the server logs detailing each successful connection. This is off by default, although it is probably very useful. This option can only be set at server start or in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file.

`LOG_DURATION` (boolean)

Causes the duration of every completed statement to be logged. To use this option, enable `LOG_STATEMENT` and `LOG_PID` so you can link the statement to the duration using the process ID.

`LOG_MIN_ERROR_STATEMENT` (string)

This controls for which message levels the SQL statement causing that message is to be recorded in the server log. All statements causing a message of the level of the setting or higher are logged. The default is `PANIC` (effectively turning this feature off). Valid values are `DEBUG5`, `DEBUG4`, `DEBUG3`, `DEBUG2`, `DEBUG1`, `INFO`, `NOTICE`, `WARNING`, `ERROR`, `FATAL`, and `PANIC`. For example, if you set this to `ERROR` then all SQL statements causing errors, fatal errors, or panics will be logged.

It is recommended you enable `LOG_PID` as well so you can more easily match the error statement with the error message.

`LOG_PID` (boolean)

Prefixes each server message in the log file with the process ID of the backend process. This is useful to sort out which messages pertain to which connection. The default is off. This parameter does not affect messages logged via syslog, which always contain the process ID.

`LOG_STATEMENT` (boolean)

Causes each SQL statement to be logged.

`LOG_TIMESTAMP` (boolean)

Prefixes each server log message with a time stamp. The default is off.

SHOW\_STATEMENT\_STATS (boolean)

SHOW\_PARSER\_STATS (boolean)

SHOW\_PLANNER\_STATS (boolean)

SHOW\_EXECUTOR\_STATS (boolean)

For each query, write performance statistics of the respective module to the server log. This is a crude profiling instrument.

SHOW\_SOURCE\_PORT (boolean)

Shows the outgoing port number of the connecting host in the connection log messages. You could trace back the port number to find out what user initiated the connection. Other than that, it's pretty useless and therefore off by default. This option can only be set at server start.

STATS\_COMMAND\_STRING (boolean)

STATS\_BLOCK\_LEVEL (boolean)

STATS\_ROW\_LEVEL (boolean)

These flags determine what information backends send to the statistics collector process: current commands, block-level activity statistics, or row-level activity statistics. All default to off. Enabling statistics collection costs a small amount of time per query, but is invaluable for debugging and performance tuning.

STATS\_RESET\_ON\_SERVER\_START (boolean)

If on, collected statistics are zeroed out whenever the server is restarted. If off, statistics are accumulated across server restarts. The default is on. This option can only be set at server start.

STATS\_START\_COLLECTOR (boolean)

Controls whether the server should start the statistics-collection subprocess. This is on by default, but may be turned off if you know you have no interest in collecting statistics. This option can only be set at server start.

SYSLOG (integer)

PostgreSQL allows the use of syslog for logging. If this option is set to 1, messages go both to syslog and the standard output. A setting of 2 sends output only to syslog. (Some messages will still go to the standard output/error.) The default is 0, which means syslog is off. This option must be set at server start.

SYSLOG\_FACILITY (string)

This option determines the syslog "facility" to be used when syslog is enabled. You may choose from LOCAL0, LOCAL1, LOCAL2, LOCAL3, LOCAL4, LOCAL5, LOCAL6, LOCAL7; the default is LOCAL0. See also the documentation of your system's syslog.

SYSLOG\_IDENT (string)

If logging to syslog is enabled, this option determines the program name used to identify PostgreSQL messages in syslog log messages. The default is `postgres`.

TRACE\_NOTIFY (boolean)

Generates a great amount of debugging output for the `LISTEN` and `NOTIFY` commands.

### 3.4.4. General Operation

`AUTOCOMMIT` (boolean)

If set to true, PostgreSQL will automatically do a `COMMIT` after each successful command that is not inside an explicit transaction block (that is, unless a `BEGIN` with no matching `COMMIT` has been given). If set to false, PostgreSQL will commit only upon receiving an explicit `COMMIT` command. This mode can also be thought of as implicitly issuing `BEGIN` whenever a command is received that is not already inside a transaction block. The default is true, for compatibility with historical PostgreSQL behavior. However, for maximum compatibility with the SQL specification, set it to false.

**Note:** Even with `autocommit` set to false, `SET`, `SHOW`, and `RESET` do not start new transaction blocks. They are run in their own transactions. Once another command is issued, a transaction block begins and any `SET`, `SHOW`, or `RESET` commands are considered to be part of the transaction, i.e., they are committed or rolled back depending on the completion status of the transaction. To execute a `SET`, `SHOW`, or `RESET` command at the start of a transaction block, use `BEGIN` first.

**Note:** As of PostgreSQL 7.3, setting `autocommit` to false is not well-supported. This is a new feature and is not yet handled by all client libraries and applications. Before making it the default setting in your installation, test carefully.

`AUSTRALIAN_TIMEZONES` (boolean)

If set to true, `CST`, `EST`, and `SAT` are interpreted as Australian time zones rather than as North American Central/Eastern time zones and Saturday. The default is false.

`AUTHENTICATION_TIMEOUT` (integer)

Maximum time to complete client authentication, in seconds. If a would-be client has not completed the authentication protocol in this much time, the server breaks the connection. This prevents hung clients from occupying a connection indefinitely. This option can only be set at server start or in the `postgresql.conf` file.

`CLIENT_ENCODING` (string)

Sets the client-side encoding for multibyte character sets. The default is to use the database encoding.

`DATESTYLE` (string)

Sets the display format for dates, as well as the rules for interpreting ambiguous input dates. The default is `ISO`, `US`.

`DB_USER_NAMESPACE` (boolean)

This allows per-database user names. It is off by default.

If this is on, create users as `username@dbname`. When `username` is passed by a connecting client, `@` and the database name is appended to the user name and that database-specific user name is looked up by the server. Note that when you create users with names containing `@` within the SQL environment, you will need to quote the user name.

With this option enabled, you can still create ordinary global users. Simply append @ when specifying the user name in the client. The @ will be stripped off before the user name is looked up by the server.

**Note:** This feature is intended as a temporary measure until a complete solution is found. At that time, this option will be removed.

#### DEADLOCK\_TIMEOUT (integer)

This is the amount of time, in milliseconds, to wait on a lock before checking to see if there is a deadlock condition. The check for deadlock is relatively slow, so the server doesn't run it every time it waits for a lock. We (optimistically?) assume that deadlocks are not common in production applications and just wait on the lock for a while before starting check for a deadlock. Increasing this value reduces the amount of time wasted in needless deadlock checks, but slows down reporting of real deadlock errors. The default is 1000 (i.e., one second), which is probably about the smallest value you would want in practice. On a heavily loaded server you might want to raise it. Ideally the setting should exceed your typical transaction time, so as to improve the odds that the lock will be released before the waiter decides to check for deadlock. This option can only be set at server start.

#### DEFAULT\_TRANSACTION\_ISOLATION (string)

Each SQL transaction has an isolation level, which can be either "read committed" or "serializable". This parameter controls the default isolation level of each new transaction. The default is "read committed".

Consult the *PostgreSQL User's Guide* and the command `SET TRANSACTION` for more information.

#### DYNAMIC\_LIBRARY\_PATH (string)

If a dynamically loadable module needs to be opened and the specified name does not have a directory component (i.e. the name does not contain a slash), the system will search this path for the specified file. (The name that is used is the name specified in the `CREATE FUNCTION` or `LOAD` command.)

The value for `dynamic_library_path` has to be a colon-separated list of absolute directory names. If a directory name starts with the special value `$libdir`, the compiled-in PostgreSQL package library directory is substituted. This where the modules provided by the PostgreSQL distribution are installed. (Use `pg_config --pkglibdir` to print the name of this directory.) For example:

```
dynamic_library_path = '/usr/local/lib/postgresql:/home/my_project/lib:$libdir'
```

The default value for this parameter is `'$libdir'`. If the value is set to an empty string, the automatic path search is turned off.

This parameter can be changed at run time by superusers, but a setting done that way will only persist until the end of the client connection, so this method should be reserved for development purposes. The recommended way to set this parameter is in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file.

#### KRB\_SERVER\_KEYFILE (string)

Sets the location of the Kerberos server key file. See Section 6.2.3 for details.

#### FSYNC (boolean)

If this option is on, the PostgreSQL backend will use the `fsync()` system call in several places to make sure that updates are physically written to disk. This insures that a database installation will

recover to a consistent state after an operating system or hardware crash. (Crashes of the database server itself are *not* related to this.)

However, this operation does slow down PostgreSQL because at transaction commit it has wait for the operating system to flush the write-ahead log. Without `fsync`, the operating system is allowed to do its best in buffering, sorting, and delaying writes, which can considerably increase performance. However, if the system crashes, the results of the last few committed transactions may be lost in part or whole. In the worst case, unrecoverable data corruption may occur.

For the above reasons, some administrators always leave it off, some turn it off only for bulk loads, where there is a clear restart point if something goes wrong, and some leave it on just to be on the safe side. Because it is always safe, the default is on. If you trust your operating system, your hardware, and your utility company (or better your UPS), you might want to disable `fsync`.

It should be noted that the performance penalty of doing `fsyncs` is considerably less in PostgreSQL version 7.1 and later. If you previously suppressed `fsyncs` for performance reasons, you may wish to reconsider your choice.

This option can only be set at server start or in the `postgresql.conf` file.

`LC_MESSAGES` (string)

Sets the language in which messages are displayed. Acceptable values are system-dependent; see Section 7.1 for more information. If this variable is set to the empty string (which is the default) then the value is inherited from the execution environment of the server in a system-dependent way.

On some systems, this locale category does not exist. Setting this variable will still work, but there will be no effect. Also, there is a chance that no translated messages for the desired language exist. In that case you will continue to see the English messages.

`LC_MONETARY` (string)

Sets the locale to use for formatting monetary amounts, for example with the `to_char()` family of functions. Acceptable values are system-dependent; see Section 7.1 for more information. If this variable is set to the empty string (which is the default) then the value is inherited from the execution environment of the server in a system-dependent way.

`LC_NUMERIC` (string)

Sets the locale to use for formatting numbers, for example with the `to_char()` family of functions. Acceptable values are system-dependent; see Section 7.1 for more information. If this variable is set to the empty string (which is the default) then the value is inherited from the execution environment of the server in a system-dependent way.

`LC_TIME` (string)

Sets the locale to use for formatting date and time values. (Currently, this setting does nothing, but it may in the future.) Acceptable values are system-dependent; see Section 7.1 for more information. If this variable is set to the empty string (which is the default) then the value is inherited from the execution environment of the server in a system-dependent way.

`MAX_CONNECTIONS` (integer)

Determines the maximum number of concurrent connections to the database server. The default is 32 (unless altered while building the server). This parameter can only be set at server start.

`MAX_EXPR_DEPTH` (integer)

Sets the maximum expression nesting depth of the parser. The default value is high enough for any normal query, but you can raise it if needed. (But if you raise it too high, you run the risk of backend crashes due to stack overflow.)

`MAX_FILES_PER_PROCESS` (integer)

Sets the maximum number of simultaneously open files in each server subprocess. The default is 1000. The limit actually used by the code is the smaller of this setting and the result of `sysconf(_SC_OPEN_MAX)`. Therefore, on systems where `sysconf` returns a reasonable limit, you don't need to worry about this setting. But on some platforms (notably, most BSD systems), `sysconf` returns a value that is much larger than the system can really support when a large number of processes all try to open that many files. If you find yourself seeing "Too many open files" failures, try reducing this setting. This option can only be set at server start or in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file; if changed in the configuration file, it only affects subsequently-started server subprocesses.

`MAX_FSM_RELATIONS` (integer)

Sets the maximum number of relations (tables) for which free space will be tracked in the shared free-space map. The default is 1000. This option can only be set at server start.

`MAX_FSM_PAGES` (integer)

Sets the maximum number of disk pages for which free space will be tracked in the shared free-space map. The default is 10000. This option can only be set at server start.

`MAX_LOCKS_PER_TRANSACTION` (integer)

The shared lock table is sized on the assumption that at most `max_locks_per_transaction * max_connections` distinct objects will need to be locked at any one time. The default, 64, which has historically proven sufficient, but you might need to raise this value if you have clients that touch many different tables in a single transaction. This option can only be set at server start.

`PASSWORD_ENCRYPTION` (boolean)

When a password is specified in `CREATE USER` or `ALTER USER` without writing either `ENCRYPTED` or `UNENCRYPTED`, this flag determines whether the password is to be encrypted. The default is on (encrypt the password).

`PORT` (integer)

The TCP port the server listens on; 5432 by default. This option can only be set at server start.

`SEARCH_PATH` (string)

This variable specifies the order in which schemas are searched when an object (table, data type, function, etc.) is referenced by a simple name with no schema component. When there are objects of identical names in different schemas, the one found first in the search path is used. An object that is not in any of the schemas in the search path can only be referenced by specifying its containing schema with a qualified (dotted) name.

The value for `search_path` has to be a comma-separated list of schema names. If one of the list items is the special value `$user`, then the schema having the same name as the `SESSION_USER` is substituted, if there is such a schema. (If not, `$user` is ignored.)

The system catalog schema, `pg_catalog`, is always searched, whether it is mentioned in the path or not. If it is mentioned in the path then it will be searched in the specified order. If `pg_catalog` is not in the path then it will be searched *before* searching any of the path items. It should also be noted that the temporary-table schema, `pg_temp_nnn`, is implicitly searched before any of these.

When objects are created without specifying a particular target schema, they will be placed in the first schema listed in the search path. An error is reported if the search path is empty.

The default value for this parameter is `'$user, public'` (where the second part will be ignored if there is no schema named `public`). This supports shared use of a database (where no users have private schemas, and all share use of `public`), private per-user schemas, and combinations of these. Other effects can be obtained by altering the default search path setting, either globally or per-user.

The current effective value of the search path can be examined via the SQL function `current_schemas()`. This is not quite the same as examining the value of `search_path`, since `current_schemas()` shows how the requests appearing in `search_path` were resolved.

For more information on schema handling, see the *PostgreSQL User's Guide*.

`STATEMENT_TIMEOUT` (integer)

Aborts any statement that takes over the specified number of milliseconds. A value of zero turns off the timer.

`SHARED_BUFFERS` (integer)

Sets the number of shared memory buffers used by the database server. The default is 64. Each buffer is typically 8192 bytes. This must be greater than 16, as well as at least twice the value of `MAX_CONNECTIONS`; however, a higher value can often improve performance on modern machines. Values of at least a few thousand are recommended for production installations. This option can only be set at server start.

Increasing this parameter may cause PostgreSQL to request more System V shared memory than your operating system's default configuration allows. See Section 3.5.1 for information on how to adjust these parameters, if necessary.

`SILENT_MODE` (bool)

Runs the server silently. If this option is set, the server will automatically run in background and any controlling ttys are disassociated, thus no messages are written to standard output or standard error (same effect as `postmaster`'s `-S` option). Unless some logging system such as `syslog` is enabled, using this option is discouraged since it makes it impossible to see error messages.

`SORT_MEM` (integer)

Specifies the amount of memory to be used by internal sorts and hashes before switching to temporary disk files. The value is specified in kilobytes, and defaults to 1024 kilobytes (1 MB). Note that for a complex query, several sorts might be running in parallel, and each one will be allowed to use as much memory as this value specifies before it starts to put data into temporary files. Also, each running backend could be doing one or more sorts simultaneously, so the total memory used could be many times the value of `SORT_MEM`. Sorts are used by `ORDER BY`, merge joins, and `CREATE INDEX`.

`SQL_INHERITANCE` (bool)

This controls the inheritance semantics, in particular whether subtables are included by various commands by default. They were not included in versions prior to 7.1. If you need the old behavior you can set this variable to off, but in the long run you are encouraged to change your applications to use

the `ONLY` keyword to exclude subtables. See the SQL language reference and the *PostgreSQL User's Guide* for more information about inheritance.

`SSL` (boolean)

Enables SSL connections. Please read Section 3.7 before using this. The default is off.

`SUPERUSER_RESERVED_CONNECTIONS` (integer)

Determines the number of “connection slots” that are reserved for connections by PostgreSQL superusers. At most `max_connections` connections can ever be active simultaneously. Whenever the number of active concurrent connections is at least `max_connections` minus `superuser_reserved_connections`, new connections will be accepted only from superuser accounts.

The default value is 2. The value must be less than the value of `max_connections`. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`TCPIP_SOCKET` (boolean)

If this is true, then the server will accept TCP/IP connections. Otherwise only local Unix domain socket connections are accepted. It is off by default. This option can only be set at server start.

`TIMEZONE` (string)

Sets the time zone for displaying and interpreting timestamps. The default is to use whatever the system environment specifies as the time zone.

`TRANSFORM_NULL_EQUALS` (boolean)

When turned on, expressions of the form `expr = NULL` (or `NULL = expr`) are treated as `expr IS NULL`, that is, they return true if `expr` evaluates to the null value, and false otherwise. The correct behavior of `expr = NULL` is to always return null (unknown). Therefore this option defaults to off.

However, filtered forms in Microsoft Access generate queries that appear to use `expr = NULL` to test for null values, so if you use that interface to access the database you might want to turn this option on. Since expressions of the form `expr = NULL` always return the null value (using the correct interpretation) they are not very useful and do not appear often in normal applications, so this option does little harm in practice. But new users are frequently confused about the semantics of expressions involving null values, so this option is not on by default.

Note that this option only affects the literal `=` operator, not other comparison operators or other expressions that are computationally equivalent to some expression involving the equals operator (such as `IN`). Thus, this option is not a general fix for bad programming.

Refer to the *PostgreSQL User's Guide* for related information.

`UNIX_SOCKET_DIRECTORY` (string)

Specifies the directory of the Unix-domain socket on which the server is to listen for connections from client applications. The default is normally `/tmp`, but can be changed at build time.

`UNIX_SOCKET_GROUP` (string)

Sets the group owner of the Unix domain socket. (The owning user of the socket is always the user that starts the server.) In combination with the option `UNIX_SOCKET_PERMISSIONS` this can be used as an additional access control mechanism for this socket type. By default this is the empty string, which uses the default group for the current user. This option can only be set at server start.

`UNIX_SOCKET_PERMISSIONS` (integer)

Sets the access permissions of the Unix domain socket. Unix domain sockets use the usual Unix file system permission set. The option value is expected to be an numeric mode specification in the form accepted by the `chmod` and `umask` system calls. (To use the customary octal format the number must start with a 0 (zero).)

The default permissions are `0777`, meaning anyone can connect. Reasonable alternatives are `0770` (only user and group, see also under `UNIX_SOCKET_GROUP`) and `0700` (only user). (Note that actually for a Unix domain socket, only write permission matters and there is no point in setting or revoking read or execute permissions.)

This access control mechanism is independent of the one described in Chapter 6.

This option can only be set at server start.

`VACUUM_MEM` (integer)

Specifies the maximum amount of memory to be used by `VACUUM` to keep track of to-be-reclaimed tuples. The value is specified in kilobytes, and defaults to 8192 kilobytes. Larger settings may improve the speed of vacuuming large tables that have many deleted tuples.

`VIRTUAL_HOST` (string)

Specifies the TCP/IP host name or address on which the postmaster is to listen for connections from client applications. Defaults to listening on all configured addresses (including localhost).

### 3.4.5. WAL

See also Section 12.3 for details on WAL tuning.

`CHECKPOINT_SEGMENTS` (integer)

Maximum distance between automatic WAL checkpoints, in log file segments (each segment is normally 16 megabytes). This option can only be set at server start or in the `postgresql.conf` file.

`CHECKPOINT_TIMEOUT` (integer)

Maximum time between automatic WAL checkpoints, in seconds. This option can only be set at server start or in the `postgresql.conf` file.

`COMMIT_DELAY` (integer)

Time delay between writing a commit record to the WAL buffer and flushing the buffer out to disk, in microseconds. A nonzero delay allows multiple transactions to be committed with only one `fsync` system call, if system load is high enough additional transactions may become ready to commit within the given interval. But the delay is just wasted if no other transactions become ready to commit. Therefore, the delay is only performed if at least `COMMIT_SIBLINGS` other transactions are active at the instant that a backend process has written its commit record.

COMMIT\_SIBLINGS (integer)

Minimum number of concurrent open transactions to require before performing the COMMIT\_DELAY delay. A larger value makes it more probable that at least one other transaction will become ready to commit during the delay interval.

WAL\_BUFFERS (integer)

Number of disk-page buffers in shared memory for WAL logging. The default is 4. This option can only be set at server start.

WAL\_DEBUG (integer)

If nonzero, turn on WAL-related debugging output on standard error.

WAL\_SYNC\_METHOD (string)

Method used for forcing WAL updates out to disk. Possible values are FSYNC (call `fsync()` at each commit), FDATASYNC (call `fdatasync()` at each commit), OPEN\_SYNC (write WAL files with `open()` option `O_SYNC`), or OPEN\_DATASYNC (write WAL files with `open()` option `O_DSYN`). Not all of these choices are available on all platforms. This option can only be set at server start or in the `postgresql.conf` file.

### 3.4.6. Short Options

For convenience there are also single letter option switches available for many parameters. They are described in Table 3-2.

**Table 3-2. Short option key**

Short option	Equivalent
-B x	shared_buffers = x
-d x	server_min_messages = DEBUGx
-F	fsync = off
-h x	virtual_host = x
-i	tcpip_socket = on
-k x	unix_socket_directory = x
-l	ssl = on
-N x	max_connections = x
-p x	port = x
-fi, -fh, -fm, -fn, -fs, -fta	enable_indexscan=off, enable_hashjoin=off, enable_mergejoin=off, enable_nestloop=off, enable_seqscan=off, enable_tidscan=off
-Sa	show_statement_stats = on

Short option	Equivalent
<code>-S x<sub>a</sub></code>	<code>sort_mem = x</code>
<code>-tpa, -tpl, -tea</code>	<code>show_parser_stats=on,</code> <code>show_planner_stats=on,</code> <code>show_executor_stats=on</code>
Notes: a. For historical reasons, these options must be passed to the individual backend process via the <code>-o postmaster</code> option, for example, <pre>\$ postmaster -o '-S 1024 -s'</pre> or via <code>PGOPTIONS</code> from the client side, as explained above.	

## 3.5. Managing Kernel Resources

A large PostgreSQL installation can quickly exhaust various operating system resource limits. (On some systems, the factory defaults are so low that you don't even need a really "large" installation.) If you have encountered this kind of problem, keep reading.

### 3.5.1. Shared Memory and Semaphores

Shared memory and semaphores are collectively referred to as "System V IPC" (together with message queues, which are not relevant for PostgreSQL). Almost all modern operating systems provide these features, but not all of them have them turned on or sufficiently sized by default, especially systems with BSD heritage. (For the QNX and BeOS ports, PostgreSQL provides its own replacement implementation of these facilities.)

The complete lack of these facilities is usually manifested by an Illegal system call error upon postmaster start. In that case there's nothing left to do but to reconfigure your kernel -- PostgreSQL won't work without them.

When PostgreSQL exceeds one of the various hard IPC limits, the postmaster will refuse to start and should leave an instructive error message describing the problem encountered and what to do about it. (See also Section 3.3.1.) The relevant kernel parameters are named consistently across different systems; Table 3-3 gives an overview. The methods to set them, however, vary. Suggestions for some platforms are given below. Be warned that it is often necessary to reboot your machine, and possibly even recompile the kernel, to change these settings.

**Table 3-3. System V IPC parameters**

Name	Description	Reasonable values
SHMMAX	Maximum size of shared memory segment (bytes)	250kB + 8.2 kB * shared_buffers + 14.2 kB * max_connections or infinity
SHMMIN	Minimum size of shared memory segment (bytes)	1

Name	Description	Reasonable values
SHMALL	Total amount of shared memory available (bytes or pages)	if bytes, same as SHMMAX; if pages, $\text{ceil}(\text{SHMMAX}/\text{PAGE\_SIZE})$
SHMSEG	Maximum number of shared memory segments per process	only 1 segment is needed, but the default is much higher
SHMMNI	Maximum number of shared memory segments system-wide	like SHMSEG plus room for other applications
SEMMNI	Maximum number of semaphore identifiers (i.e., sets)	$\geq \text{ceil}(\text{max\_connections} / 16)$
SEMMNS	Maximum number of semaphores system-wide	$\text{ceil}(\text{max\_connections} / 16) * 17 + \text{room for other applications}$
SEMMSL	Maximum number of semaphores per set	$\geq 17$
SEMMAP	Number of entries in semaphore map	see text
SEMMX	Maximum value of semaphore	$\geq 255$ (The default is often 32767, don't change unless asked to.)

The most important shared memory parameter is SHMMAX, the maximum size, in bytes, of a shared memory segment. If you get an error message from `shmget` like `Invalid argument`, it is possible that this limit has been exceeded. The size of the required shared memory segment varies both with the number of requested buffers (`-B` option) and the number of allowed connections (`-N` option), although the former is the most significant. (You can, as a temporary solution, lower these settings to eliminate the failure.) As a rough approximation, you can estimate the required segment size by multiplying the number of buffers and the block size (8 kB by default) plus ample overhead (at least half a megabyte). Any error message you might get will contain the size of the failed allocation request.

Less likely to cause problems is the minimum size for shared memory segments (SHMMIN), which should be at most approximately 256 kB for PostgreSQL (it is usually just 1). The maximum number of segments system-wide (SHMMNI) or per-process (SHMSEG) should not cause a problem unless your system has them set to zero. Some systems also have a limit on the total amount of shared memory in the system; see the platform-specific instructions below.

PostgreSQL uses one semaphore per allowed connection (`-N` option), in sets of 16. Each such set will also contain a 17th semaphore which contains a “magic number”, to detect collision with semaphore sets used by other applications. The maximum number of semaphores in the system is set by SEMMNS, which consequently must be at least as high as the connection setting plus one extra for each 16 allowed connections (see the formula in Table 3-3). The parameter SEMMNI determines the limit on the number of semaphore sets that can exist on the system at one time. Hence this parameter must be at least  $\text{ceil}(\text{max\_connections} / 16)$ . Lowering the number of allowed connections is a temporary workaround for failures, which are usually confusingly worded “No space left on device”, from the function `semget()`.

In some cases it might also be necessary to increase SEMMAP to be at least on the order of SEMMNS. This parameter defines the size of the semaphore resource map, in which each contiguous block of available

semaphores needs an entry. When a semaphore set is freed it is either added to an existing entry that is adjacent to the freed block or it is registered under a new map entry. If the map is full, the freed semaphores get lost (until reboot). Fragmentation of the semaphore space could over time lead to fewer available semaphores than there should be.

The `SEMMSL` parameter, which determines how many semaphores can be in a set, must be at least 17 for PostgreSQL.

Various other settings related to “semaphore undo”, such as `SEMMNU` and `SEMUME`, are not of concern for PostgreSQL.

## BSD/OS

**Shared Memory.** By default, only 4 MB of shared memory is supported. Keep in mind that shared memory is not pageable; it is locked in RAM. To increase the number of shared buffers supported by the postmaster, add the following to your kernel configuration file. A `SHMALL` value of 1024 represents 4 MB of shared memory. The following increases the maximum shared memory area to 32 MB:

```
options "SHMALL=8192"
options "SHMMAX=\(SHMALL*PAGE_SIZE\)"
```

For those running 4.1 or later, just make the above changes, recompile the kernel, and reboot. For those running earlier releases, use `bpatch` to find the `sysptsize` value in the current kernel. This is computed dynamically at boot time.

```
$ bpatch -r sysptsize
0x9 = 9
```

Next, add `SYSPTSIZE` as a hard-coded value in the kernel configuration file. Increase the value you found using `bpatch`. Add 1 for every additional 4 MB of shared memory you desire.

```
options "SYSPTSIZE=16"
```

`sysptsize` cannot be changed by `sysctl`.

**Semaphores.** You may need to increase the number of semaphores. By default, PostgreSQL allocates 34 semaphores, which is over half the default system total of 60.

Set the values you want in your kernel configuration file, e.g.:

```
options "SEMMNI=40"
options "SEMMNS=240"
options "SEMUME=40"
options "SEMMNU=120"
```

## FreeBSD

### NetBSD

### OpenBSD

The options `SYSVSHM` and `SYSVSEM` need to be enabled when the kernel is compiled. (They are by default.) The maximum size of shared memory is determined by the option `SHMMAXPGS` (in pages). The following shows an example of how to set the various parameters:

```
options          SYSVSHM
options          SHMMAXPGS=4096
```

```

options          SHMSEG=256

options          SYSVSEM
options          SEMMNI=256
options          SEMMNS=512
options          SEMMNU=256
options          SEMMAP=256

```

(On NetBSD and OpenBSD the key word is actually `option` singular.)

You may also want to use the `sysctl` setting to lock shared memory into RAM and prevent it from being paged out to swap.

### HP-UX

The default settings tend to suffice for normal installations. On HP-UX 10, the factory default for `SEMMNS` is 128, which might be too low for larger database sites.

IPC parameters can be set in the System Administration Manager (SAM) under Kernel Configuration—>Configurable Parameters. Hit Create A New Kernel when you're done.

### Linux

The default shared memory limit (both `SHMMAX` and `SHMALL`) is 32 MB in 2.2 kernels, but it can be changed in the `proc` file system (without reboot). For example, to allow 128 MB:

```

$ echo 134217728 >/proc/sys/kernel/shmall
$ echo 134217728 >/proc/sys/kernel/shmmax

```

You could put these commands into a script run at boot-time.

Alternatively, you can use `sysctl`, if available, to control these parameters. Look for a file called `/etc/sysctl.conf` and add lines like the following to it:

```

kernel.shmall = 134217728
kernel.shmmax = 134217728

```

This file is usually processed at boot time, but `sysctl` can also be called explicitly later.

Other parameters are sufficiently sized for any application. If you want to see for yourself look in `/usr/src/linux/include/asm-xxx/shmparam.h` and `/usr/src/linux/include/linux/sem.h`.

### MacOS X

Edit the file `/System/Library/StartupItems/SystemTuning/SystemTuning` and change the following values:

```

sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmmax
sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmmin
sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmmni
sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmseg
sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmall

```

These values have the same meanings on MacOS X as those listed for previous operating systems.

## SCO OpenServer

In the default configuration, only 512 kB of shared memory per segment is allowed, which is about enough for `-B 24 -N 12`. To increase the setting, first change directory to `/etc/conf/cf.d`. To display the current value of `SHMMAX`, in bytes, run

```
./configure -y SHMMAX
```

To set a new value for `SHMMAX`, run:

```
./configure SHMMAX=value
```

where `value` is the new value you want to use (in bytes). After setting `SHMMAX`, rebuild the kernel

```
./link_unix
```

and reboot.

## Solaris

At least in version 2.6, the default maximum size of a shared memory segments is too low for PostgreSQL. The relevant settings can be changed in `/etc/system`, for example:

```
set shmsys:shminfo_shmmax=0x2000000
set shmsys:shminfo_shmmin=1
set shmsys:shminfo_shmmni=256
set shmsys:shminfo_shmseg=256

set semsys:seminfo_semmap=256
set semsys:seminfo_semmni=512
set semsys:seminfo_semms=512
set semsys:seminfo_semmsl=32
```

You need to reboot for the changes to take effect.

See also <http://www.sunworld.com/swol-09-1997/swol-09-insidesolaris.html> for information on shared memory under Solaris.

## UnixWare

On UnixWare 7, the maximum size for shared memory segments is 512 kB in the default configuration. This is enough for about `-B 24 -N 12`. To display the current value of `SHMMAX`, run

```
/etc/conf/bin/idtune -g SHMMAX
```

which displays the current, default, minimum, and maximum values, in bytes. To set a new value for `SHMMAX`, run:

```
/etc/conf/bin/idtune SHMMAX value
```

where `value` is the new value you want to use (in bytes). After setting `SHMMAX`, rebuild the kernel

```
/etc/conf/bin/idbuild -B
```

and reboot.

### 3.5.2. Resource Limits

Unix-like operating systems enforce various kinds of resource limits that might interfere with the operation of your PostgreSQL server. Of particular importance are limits on the number of processes per user, the number of open files per process, and the amount of memory available to each process. Each of these have a “hard” and a “soft” limit. The soft limit is what actually counts but it can be changed by the user up to the hard limit. The hard limit can only be changed by the root user. The system call `setrlimit` is responsible for setting these parameters. The shell’s built-in command `ulimit` (Bourne shells) or `limit` (csh) is used to control the resource limits from the command line. On BSD-derived systems the file `/etc/login.conf` controls the various resource limits set during login. See `login.conf` for details. The relevant parameters are `maxproc`, `openfiles`, and `datasize`. For example:

```
default:\
...
      :datasize-cur=256M:\
      :maxproc-cur=256:\
      :openfiles-cur=256:\
...
```

(`-cur` is the soft limit. Append `-max` to set the hard limit.)

Kernels can also have system-wide limits on some resources.

- On Linux `/proc/sys/fs/file-max` determines the maximum number of open files that the kernel will support. It can be changed by writing a different number into the file or by adding an assignment in `/etc/sysctl.conf`. The maximum limit of files per process is fixed at the time the kernel is compiled; see `/usr/src/linux/Documentation/proc.txt` for more information.

The PostgreSQL server uses one process per connection so you should provide for at least as many processes as allowed connections, in addition to what you need for the rest of your system. This is usually not a problem but if you run several servers on one machine things might get tight.

The factory default limit on open files is often set to “socially friendly” values that allow many users to coexist on a machine without using an inappropriate fraction of the system resources. If you run many servers on a machine this is perhaps what you want, but on dedicated servers you may want to raise this limit.

On the other side of the coin, some systems allow individual processes to open large numbers of files; if more than a few processes do so then the system-wide limit can easily be exceeded. If you find this happening, and don’t want to alter the system-wide limit, you can set PostgreSQL’s `max_files_per_process` configuration parameter to limit the consumption of open files.

## 3.6. Shutting Down the Server

There are several ways to shut down the database server. You control the type of shutdown by sending

different signals to the server process.

#### SIGTERM

After receiving SIGTERM, the postmaster disallows new connections, but lets existing backends end their work normally. It shuts down only after all of the backends terminate normally. This is *Smart Shutdown*.

#### SIGINT

The postmaster disallows new connections and sends all existing backends SIGTERM, which will cause them to abort their current transactions and exit promptly. It then waits for the backends to exit and finally shuts down. This is *Fast Shutdown*.

#### SIGQUIT

This is *Immediate Shutdown*, which will cause the postmaster to send a SIGQUIT to all backends and exit immediately (without properly shutting itself down). The backends likewise exit immediately upon receiving SIGQUIT. This will lead to recovery (by replaying the WAL log) upon next start-up. This is recommended only in emergencies.

**Important:** It is best not to use SIGKILL to shut down the postmaster. This will prevent the postmaster from releasing shared memory and semaphores, which may then have to be done by manually.

The PID of the postmaster process can be found using the `ps` program, or from the file `postmaster.pid` in the data directory. So for example, to do a fast shutdown:

```
$ kill -INT `head -1 /usr/local/pgsql/data/postmaster.pid`
```

The program `pg_ctl` is a shell script that provides a more convenient interface for shutting down the postmaster.

## 3.7. Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSL

PostgreSQL has native support for using SSL connections to encrypt client/server communications for increased security. This requires OpenSSL be installed on both client and server systems and support enabled at build time (see Chapter 1).

With SSL support compiled in, the PostgreSQL server can be started with SSL support by setting the parameter `ssl` to `on` in `postgresql.conf`. When starting in SSL mode, the server will look for the files `server.key` and `server.crt` in the data directory. These files should contain the server private key and certificate respectively. These files must be set up correctly before an SSL-enabled server can start. If the private key is protected with a passphrase, the server will prompt for the passphrase and will not start until it has been entered.

The server will listen for both standard and SSL connections on the same TCP/IP port, and will negotiate with any connecting client on whether to use SSL. See Chapter 6 about how to force the server to require use of SSL for certain connections.

For details on how to create your server private key and certificate, refer to the OpenSSL documentation. A simple self-signed certificate can be used to get started for testing, but a certificate signed by a certificate authority (CA) (either one of the global CAs or a local one) should be used in production so the client can verify the server's identity. To create a quick self-signed certificate, use the following OpenSSL command:

```
openssl req -new -text -out server.req
```

Fill out the information that `openssl` asks for. Make sure that you enter the local host name as Common Name; the challenge password can be left blank. The script will generate a key that is passphrase protected; it will not accept a passphrase that is less than four characters long. To remove the passphrase (as you must if you want automatic start-up of the server), run the commands

```
openssl rsa -in privkey.pem -out server.key
rm privkey.pem
```

Enter the old passphrase to unlock the existing key. Now do

```
openssl req -x509 -in server.req -text -key server.key -out server.crt
chmod og-rwx server.key
```

to turn the certificate into a self-signed certificate and to copy the key and certificate to where the server will look for them.

## 3.8. Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSH Tunnels

**Acknowledgement:** Idea taken from an email by Gene Selkov, Jr. (<selkovjr@mcs.anl.gov>) written on 1999-09-08 in response to a question from Eric Marsden.

One can use SSH to encrypt the network connection between clients and a PostgreSQL server. Done properly, this provides an adequately secure network connection.

First make sure that an SSH server is running properly on the same machine as PostgreSQL and that you can log in using `ssh` as some user. Then you can establish a secure tunnel with a command like this from the client machine:

```
ssh -L 3333:foo.com:5432 joe@foo.com
```

The first number in the `-L` argument, 3333, is the port number of your end of the tunnel; it can be chosen freely. The second number, 5432, is the remote end of the tunnel -- the port number your server is using. The name or the address in between the port numbers is the host with the database server you are going to connect to. In order to connect to the database server using this tunnel, you connect to port 3333 on the local machine:

```
psql -h localhost -p 3333 template1
```

To the database server it will then look as though you are really user `joe@foo.com` and it will use whatever authentication procedure was set up for this user. In order for the tunnel setup to succeed you must be allowed to connect via `ssh` as `joe@foo.com`, just as if you had attempted to use `ssh` to set up a terminal session.

**Tip:** Several other applications exist that can provide secure tunnels using a procedure similar in concept to the one just described.

# Chapter 4. Database Users and Privileges

Every database cluster contains a set of database users. Those users are separate from the users managed by the operating system on which the server runs. Users own database objects (for example, tables) and can assign privileges on those objects to other users to control who has access to which object.

This chapter describes how to create and manage users and introduces the privilege system. More information about the various types of database objects and the effects of privileges can be found in the *PostgreSQL User's Guide*.

## 4.1. Database Users

Database users are conceptually completely separate from operating system users. In practice it might be convenient to maintain a correspondence, but this is not required. Database user names are global across a database cluster installation (and not per individual database). To create a user use the `CREATE USER` SQL command:

```
CREATE USER name
```

*name* follows the rules for SQL identifiers: either unadorned without special characters, or double-quoted. To remove an existing user, use the analogous `DROP USER` command:

```
DROP USER name
```

For convenience, the programs `createuser` and `dropuser` are provided as wrappers around these SQL commands that can be called from the shell command line:

```
createuser name  
dropuser name
```

In order to bootstrap the database system, a freshly initialized system always contains one predefined user. This user will have the fixed ID 1, and by default (unless altered when running `initdb`) it will have the same name as the operating system user that initialized the database cluster. Customarily, this user will be named `postgres`. In order to create more users you first have to connect as this initial user.

Exactly one user identity is active for a connection to the database server. The user name to use for a particular database connection is indicated by the client that is initiating the connection request in an application-specific fashion. For example, the `psql` program uses the `-U` command line option to indicate the user to connect as. Many applications assume the name of the current operating system user by default (including `createuser` and `psql`). Therefore it is convenient to maintain a naming correspondence between the two user sets.

The set of database users a given client connection may connect as is determined by the client authentication setup, as explained in Chapter 6. (Thus, a client is not necessarily limited to connect as the user with the same name as its operating system user, in the same way a person is not constrained in its login name by her real name.) Since the user identity determines the set of privileges available to a connected client, it is important to carefully configure this when setting up a multiuser environment.

## 4.2. User Attributes

A database user may have a number of attributes that define its privileges and interact with the client authentication system.

### superuser

A database superuser bypasses all permission checks. Also, only a superuser can create new users. To create a database superuser, use `CREATE USER name CREATEUSER`.

### database creation

A user must be explicitly given permission to create databases (except for superusers, since those bypass all permission checks). To create such a user, use `CREATE USER name CREATEDB`.

### password

A password is only significant if the client authentication method requires the user to supply a password when connecting to the database. The `password`, `md5`, and `crypt` authentication methods make use of passwords. Database passwords are separate from operating system passwords. Specify a password upon user creation with `CREATE USER name PASSWORD 'string'`.

A user's attributes can be modified after creation with `ALTER USER`. See the reference pages for `CREATE USER` and `ALTER USER` for details.

A user can also set personal defaults for many of the run-time configuration settings described in Section 3.4. For example, if for some reason you want to disable index scans (hint: not a good idea) anytime you connect, you can use

```
ALTER USER myname SET enable_indexscan TO off;
```

This will save the setting (but not set it immediately) and in subsequent connections it will appear as though `SET enable_indexscan TO off;` had been called right before the session started. You can still alter this setting during the session; it will only be the default. To undo any such setting, use `ALTER USER username RESET varname;`

## 4.3. Groups

As in Unix, groups are a way of logically grouping users to ease management of privileges: privileges can be granted to, or revoked from, a group as a whole. To create a group, use

```
CREATE GROUP name
```

To add users to or remove users from a group, use

```
ALTER GROUP name ADD USER uname1, ...
ALTER GROUP name DROP USER uname1, ...
```

## 4.4. Privileges

When a database object is created, it is assigned an owner. The owner is the user that executed the creation statement. To change the owner of a table, index, sequence, or view, use the `ALTER TABLE` command. By default, only an owner (or a superuser) can do anything with the object. In order to allow other users to use it, *privileges* must be granted.

There are several different privileges: `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `RULE`, `REFERENCES`, `TRIGGER`, `CREATE`, `TEMPORARY`, `EXECUTE`, `USAGE`, and `ALL PRIVILEGES`. For more information on the different types of privileges support by PostgreSQL, refer to the `GRANT` page in the *PostgreSQL Reference Manual*. The right to modify or destroy an object is always the privilege of the owner only. To assign privileges, the `GRANT` command is used. So, if `joe` is an existing user, and `accounts` is an existing table, the privilege to update the table can be granted with

```
GRANT UPDATE ON accounts TO joe;
```

The user executing this command must be the owner of the table. To grant a privilege to a group, use

```
GRANT SELECT ON accounts TO GROUP staff;
```

The special “user” name `PUBLIC` can be used to grant a privilege to every user on the system. Writing `ALL` in place of a specific privilege specifies that all privileges will be granted.

To revoke a privilege, use the fittingly named `REVOKE` command:

```
REVOKE ALL ON accounts FROM PUBLIC;
```

The special privileges of the table owner (i.e., the right to do `DROP`, `GRANT`, `REVOKE`, etc) are always implicit in being the owner, and cannot be granted or revoked. But the table owner can choose to revoke his own ordinary privileges, for example to make a table read-only for himself as well as others.

## 4.5. Functions and Triggers

Functions and triggers allow users to insert code into the backend server that other users may execute without knowing it. Hence, both mechanisms permit users to *Trojan horse* others with relative impunity. The only real protection is tight control over who can define functions.

Functions written in any language except SQL run inside the backend server process with the operating systems permissions of the database server daemon process. It is possible to change the server’s internal data structures from inside of trusted functions. Hence, among many other things, such functions can circumvent any system access controls. This is an inherent problem with user-defined C functions.

# Chapter 5. Managing Databases

Every instance of a running PostgreSQL server manages one or more databases. Databases are therefore the topmost hierarchical level for organizing SQL objects (“database objects”). This chapter describes the properties of databases, and how to create, manage, and destroy them.

## 5.1. Overview

A database is a named collection of SQL objects (“database objects”). Generally, every database object (tables, functions, etc.) belongs to one and only one database. (But there are a few system catalogs, for example `pg_database`, that belong to a whole installation and are accessible from each database within the installation.) More accurately, a database is a collection of schemas and the schemas contain the tables, functions, etc. So the full hierarchy is: server, database, schema, table (or something else instead of a table).

An application that connects to the database server specifies in its connection request the name of the database it wants to connect to. It is not possible to access more than one database per connection. (But an application is not restricted in the number of connections it opens to the same or other databases.) It is possible, however, to access more than one schema from the same connection. Schemas are a purely logical structure and who can access what is managed by the privilege system. Databases are physically separated and access control is managed at the connection level. If one PostgreSQL server instance is to house projects or users that should be separate and for the most part unaware of each other, it is therefore recommendable to put them into separate databases. If the projects or users are interrelated and should be able to use each other’s resources they should be put in the same databases but possibly into separate schemas. More information about managing schemas is in the *PostgreSQL User’s Guide*.

**Note:** SQL calls databases “catalogs”, but there is no difference in practice.

## 5.2. Creating a Database

In order to create a databases, the PostgreSQL server must be up and running (see Section 3.3).

Databases are created with the query language command `CREATE DATABASE`:

```
CREATE DATABASE name
```

where *name* follows the usual rules for SQL identifiers. The current user automatically becomes the owner of the new database. It is the privilege of the owner of a database to remove it later on (which also removes all the objects in it, even if they have a different owner).

The creation of databases is a restricted operation. See Section 4.2 for how to grant permission.

Since you need to be connected to the database server in order to execute the `CREATE DATABASE` command, the question remains how the *first* database at any given site can be created. The first database is always created by the `initdb` command when the data storage area is initialized. (See Section 3.2.) By convention this database is called `template1`. So to create the first “real” database you can connect to `template1`.

The name “template1” is no accident: When a new database is created, the template database is essentially cloned. This means that any changes you make in `template1` are propagated to all subsequently created databases. This implies that you should not use the template database for real work, but when used judiciously this feature can be convenient. More details appear in Section 5.3.

As an extra convenience, there is also a program that you can execute from the shell to create new databases, `createdb`.

```
createdb dbname
```

`createdb` does no magic. It connects to the `template1` database and issues the `CREATE DATABASE` command, exactly as described above. It uses the `psql` program internally. The reference page on `createdb` contains the invocation details. Note that `createdb` without any arguments will create a database with the current user name, which may or may not be what you want.

**Note:** Chapter 6 contains information about how to restrict who can connect to a given database.

Sometimes you want to create a database for someone else. That user should become the owner of the new database, so he can configure and manage it himself. To achieve that, use one of the following commands:

```
CREATE DATABASE dbname OWNER username;
```

from the SQL environment, or

```
createdb -O username dbname
```

You must be a superuser to be allowed to create a database for someone else.

## 5.3. Template Databases

`CREATE DATABASE` actually works by copying an existing database. By default, it copies the standard system database named `template1`. Thus that database is the “template” from which new databases are made. If you add objects to `template1`, these objects will be copied into subsequently created user databases. This behavior allows site-local modifications to the standard set of objects in databases. For example, if you install the procedural language PL/pgSQL in `template1`, it will automatically be available in user databases without any extra action being taken when those databases are made.

There is a second standard system database named `template0`. This database contains the same data as the initial contents of `template1`, that is, only the standard objects predefined by your version of PostgreSQL. `template0` should never be changed after `initdb`. By instructing `CREATE DATABASE` to copy `template0` instead of `template1`, you can create a “virgin” user database that contains none of the site-local additions in `template1`. This is particularly handy when restoring a `pg_dump` dump: the dump script should be restored in a virgin database to ensure that one recreates the correct contents of the dumped database, without any conflicts with additions that may now be present in `template1`.

To create a database by copying `template0`, use

```
CREATE DATABASE dbname TEMPLATE template0;
```

from the SQL environment, or

```
createdb -T template0 dbname
```

from the shell.

It is possible to create additional template databases, and indeed one might copy any database in an installation by specifying its name as the template for `CREATE DATABASE`. It is important to understand, however, that this is not (yet) intended as a general-purpose “COPY DATABASE” facility. In particular, it is essential that the source database be idle (no data-altering transactions in progress) for the duration of the copying operation. `CREATE DATABASE` will check that no backend processes (other than itself) are connected to the source database at the start of the operation, but this does not guarantee that changes cannot be made while the copy proceeds, which would result in an inconsistent copied database. Therefore, we recommend that databases used as templates be treated as read-only.

Two useful flags exist in `pg_database` for each database: the columns `datistemplate` and `dataallowconn`. `datistemplate` may be set to indicate that a database is intended as a template for `CREATE DATABASE`. If this flag is set, the database may be cloned by any user with `CREATEDB` privileges; if it is not set, only superusers and the owner of the database may clone it. If `dataallowconn` is false, then no new connections to that database will be allowed (but existing sessions are not killed simply by setting the flag false). The `template0` database is normally marked `dataallowconn = false` to prevent modification of it. Both `template0` and `template1` should always be marked with `datistemplate = true`.

After preparing a template database, or making any changes to one, it is a good idea to perform `VACUUM FREEZE` or `VACUUM FULL FREEZE` in that database. If this is done when there are no other open transactions in the same database, then it is guaranteed that all tuples in the database are “frozen” and will not be subject to transaction ID wraparound problems. This is particularly important for a database that will have `dataallowconn` set to false, since it will be impossible to do routine maintenance `VACUUMS` on such a database. See Section 8.2.3 for more information.

**Note:** `template1` and `template0` do not have any special status beyond the fact that the name `template1` is the default source database name for `CREATE DATABASE` and the default database-to-connect-to for various programs such as `createdb`. For example, one could drop `template1` and recreate it from `template0` without any ill effects. This course of action might be advisable if one has carelessly added a bunch of junk in `template1`.

## 5.4. Database Configuration

Recall from Section 3.4 that the PostgreSQL server provides a large number of run-time configuration variables. You can set database-specific default values for many of these settings.

For example, if for some reason you want to disable the GEQO optimizer for a given database, you’d ordinarily have to either disable it for all databases or make sure that every connecting client is careful to issue `SET geqo TO off;`. To make this setting the default you can execute the command

```
ALTER DATABASE mydb SET geqo TO off;
```

This will save the setting (but not set it immediately) and in subsequent connections it will appear as though `SET geqo TO off;` had been called right before the session started. Note that users can still alter this setting during the session; it will only be the default. To undo any such setting, use `ALTER DATABASE dbname RESET varname;`

## 5.5. Alternative Locations

It is possible to create a database in a location other than the default location for the installation. Remember that all database access occurs through the database server, so any location specified must be accessible by the server.

Alternative database locations are referenced by an environment variable which gives the absolute path to the intended storage location. This environment variable must be present in the server's environment, so it must have been defined before the server was started. (Thus, the set of available alternative locations is under the site administrator's control; ordinary users can't change it.) Any valid environment variable name may be used to reference an alternative location, although using variable names with a prefix of PGDATA is recommended to avoid confusion and conflict with other variables.

To create the variable in the environment of the server process you must first shut down the server, define the variable, initialize the data area, and finally restart the server. (See Section 3.6 and Section 3.3.) To set an environment variable, type

```
PGDATA2=/home/postgres/data
export PGDATA2
```

in Bourne shells, or

```
setenv PGDATA2 /home/postgres/data
```

in csh or tcsh. You have to make sure that this environment variable is always defined in the server environment, otherwise you won't be able to access that database. Therefore you probably want to set it in some sort of shell start-up file or server start-up script.

To create a data storage area in PGDATA2, ensure that the containing directory (here, /home/postgres) already exists and is writable by the user account that runs the server (see Section 3.1). Then from the command line, type

```
initlocation PGDATA2
```

(*not* `initlocation $PGDATA2`). Then you can restart the server.

To create a database within the new location, use the command

```
CREATE DATABASE name WITH LOCATION = 'location'
```

where *location* is the environment variable you used, PGDATA2 in this example. The `createdb` command has the option `-D` for this purpose.

Databases created in alternative locations can be accessed and dropped like any other database.

**Note:** It can also be possible to specify absolute paths directly to the `CREATE DATABASE` command without defining environment variables. This is disallowed by default because it is a security risk. To allow it, you must compile PostgreSQL with the C preprocessor macro `ALLOW_ABSOLUTE_DBPATHS` defined. One way to do this is to run the compilation step like this:

```
gmake CPPFLAGS=-DALLOW_ABSOLUTE_DBPATHS all
```

## 5.6. Destroying a Database

Databases are destroyed with the command `DROP DATABASE`:

```
DROP DATABASE name
```

Only the owner of the database (i.e., the user that created it), or a superuser, can drop a database. Dropping a database removes all objects that were contained within the database. The destruction of a database cannot be undone.

You cannot execute the `DROP DATABASE` command while connected to the victim database. You can, however, be connected to any other database, including the `template1` database, which would be the only option for dropping the last user database of a given cluster.

For convenience, there is also a shell program to drop databases:

```
dropdb dbname
```

(Unlike `createdb`, it is not the default action to drop the database with the current user name.)

# Chapter 6. Client Authentication

When a client application connects to the database server, it specifies which PostgreSQL user name it wants to connect as, much the same way one logs into a Unix computer as a particular user. Within the SQL environment the active database user name determines access privileges to database objects -- see Chapter 4 for more information. Therefore, it is essential to restrict which database users can connect.

*Authentication* is the process by which the database server establishes the identity of the client, and by extension determines whether the client application (or the user who runs the client application) is permitted to connect with the user name that was requested.

PostgreSQL offers a number of different client authentication methods. The method used to authenticate a particular client connection can be selected on the basis of (client) host address, database, and user.

PostgreSQL user names are logically separate from user names of the operating system in which the server runs. If all the users of a particular server also have accounts on the server's machine, it makes sense to assign database user names that match their operating system user names. However, a server that accepts remote connections may have many users who have no local account, and in such cases there need be no connection between database user names and OS user names.

## 6.1. The `pg_hba.conf` file

Client authentication is controlled by the file `pg_hba.conf` in the data directory, e.g., `/usr/local/pgsql/data/pg_hba.conf`. (HBA stands for host-based authentication.) A default `pg_hba.conf` file is installed when the data directory is initialized by `initdb`.

The general format of the `pg_hba.conf` file is a set of records, one per line. Blank lines are ignored, as is any text after the “#” comment character. A record is made up of a number of fields which are separated by spaces and/or tabs. Fields can contain white space if the field value is quoted. Records cannot be continued across lines.

Each record specifies a connection type, a client IP address range (if relevant for the connection type), a database name, a user name, and the authentication method to be used for connections matching these parameters. The first record with a matching connection type, client address, requested database, and user name is used to perform authentication. There is no “fall-through” or “backup”: if one record is chosen and the authentication fails, subsequent records are not considered. If no record matches, access is denied.

A record may have one of the three formats

```
local database user authentication-method [authentication-option]
host database user IP-address IP-mask authentication-method [authentication-
option]
hostssl database user IP-address IP-mask authentication-method [authentication-
option]
```

The meaning of the fields is as follows:

*local*

This record matches connection attempts using Unix domain sockets. Without a record of this type, Unix-domain socket connections are disallowed

*host*

This record matches connection attempts using TCP/IP networks. Note that TCP/IP connections are disabled unless the server is started with the `-i` option or the `tcpip_socket postgresql.conf` configuration parameter is enabled.

*hostssl*

This record matches connection attempts using SSL over TCP/IP. *host* records will match either SSL or non-SSL connection attempts, but *hostssl* records require SSL connections.

To be able make use of this option the server must be built with SSL support enabled. Furthermore, SSL must be enabled by enabling the option `ssl` in `postgresql.conf` (see Section 3.4).

*database*

Specifies which databases this record matches. The value `all` specifies that it matches all databases. The value `sameuser` specifies that the record matches if the requested database has the same name as the requested user. The value `samegroup` specifies that the requested user must a member of the group with the same name as the requested database. Otherwise, this is the name of a specific PostgreSQL database. Multiple database names can be supplied by separating them with commas. A file containing database names can be specified by preceding the file name with `@`. The file must be in the same directory as `pg_hba.conf`.

*user*

Specifies which PostgreSQL users this record matches. The value `all` specifies that it matches all users. Otherwise, this is the name of a specific PostgreSQL user. Multiple user names can be supplied by separating them with commas. Group names can be specified by preceding the group name with `+`. A file containing user names can be specified by preceding the file name with `@`. The file must be in the same directory as `pg_hba.conf`.

*IP-address**IP-mask*

These two fields contain IP address/mask values in standard dotted decimal notation. (IP addresses can only be specified numerically, not as domain or host names.) Taken together they specify the client machine IP addresses that this record matches. The precise logic is that

*(actual-IP-address xor IP-address-field) and IP-mask-field*

must be zero for the record to match. (Of course IP addresses can be spoofed but this consideration is beyond the scope of PostgreSQL.)

These fields only apply to *host* and *hostssl* records.

*authentication-method*

Specifies the authentication method to use when connecting via this record. The possible choices are

summarized here; details are in Section 6.2.

#### trust

The connection is allowed unconditionally. This method allows anyone that can connect to the PostgreSQL database to login as any PostgreSQL user they like, without the need for a password. See Section 6.2.1 for details.

#### reject

The connection is rejected unconditionally. This is useful for “filtering out” certain hosts from a group.

#### md5

Requires the client to supply an MD5 encrypted password for authentication. This is the only method that allows encrypted passwords to be stored in `pg_shadow`. See Section 6.2.2 for details.

#### crypt

Like `md5` method but uses older crypt encryption, which is needed for pre-7.2 clients. `md5` is preferred for 7.2 and later clients. See Section 6.2.2 for details.

#### password

Same as “`md5`”, but the password is sent in clear text over the network. This should not be used on untrusted networks. See Section 6.2.2 for details.

#### krb4

Kerberos V4 is used to authenticate the user. This is only available for TCP/IP connections. See Section 6.2.3 for details.

#### krb5

Kerberos V5 is used to authenticate the user. This is only available for TCP/IP connections. See Section 6.2.3 for details.

#### ident

Obtain the operating system user name of the client (for TCP/IP connections by contacting the `ident` server on the client, for local connections by getting it from the operating system) and check if the user is allowed to connect as the requested database user by consulting the map specified after the `ident` key word.

If you use the map `sameuser`, the user names are assumed to be identical. If not, the map name is looked up in the file `pg_ident.conf` in the same directory as `pg_hba.conf`. The connection is accepted if that file contains an entry for this map name with the `ident`-supplied user name and the requested PostgreSQL user name.

For local connections, this only works on machines that support Unix-domain socket credentials (currently Linux, FreeBSD, NetBSD, and BSD/OS).

See Section 6.2.4 below for details.

#### pam

Authenticate using the Pluggable Authentication Modules (PAM) service provided by the operating system. See Section 6.2.5 for details.

*authentication-option*

The meaning of this optional field depends on the chosen authentication method and is described in the next section.

Since the `pg_hba.conf` records are examined sequentially for each connection attempt, the order of the records is significant. Typically, earlier records will have tight connection match parameters and weaker authentication methods, while later records will have looser match parameters and stronger authentication methods. For example, one might wish to use `trust` authentication for local TCP connections but require a password for remote TCP connections. In this case a record specifying `trust` authentication for connections from `127.0.0.1` would appear before a record specifying password authentication for a wider range of allowed client IP addresses.

**Important:** Do not prevent the superuser from accessing the `template1` database. Various utility commands need access to `template1`.

The `pg_hba.conf` file is read on start-up and when the postmaster receives a `SIGHUP` signal. If you edit the file on an active system, you will need to signal the postmaster (using `pg_ctl reload` or `kill -HUP`) to make it re-read the file.

An example of a `pg_hba.conf` file is shown in Example 6-1. See below for details on the different authentication methods.

**Example 6-1. An example `pg_hba.conf` file**

```
# Allow any user on the local system to connect to any database under
# any user name using Unix-domain sockets (the default for local
# connections).
#
# TYPE DATABASE USER IP-ADDRESS IP-MASK METHOD
local all all trust

# The same using local loopback TCP/IP connections.
#
# TYPE DATABASE USER IP-ADDRESS IP-MASK METHOD
host all all 127.0.0.1 255.255.255.255 trust

# Allow any user from any host with IP address 192.168.93.x to connect
# to database "template1" as the same user name that ident reports for
# the connection (typically the Unix user name).
#
# TYPE DATABASE USER IP-ADDRESS IP-MASK METHOD
host template1 all 192.168.93.0 255.255.255.0 ident sameuser

# Allow a user from host 192.168.12.10 to connect to database
```

```

# "templatel" if the user's password is correctly supplied.
#
# TYPE DATABASE USER IP-ADDRESS IP-MASK METHOD
host templatel all 192.168.12.10 255.255.255.255 md5

# In the absence of preceding "host" lines, these two lines will
# reject all connection from 192.168.54.1 (since that entry will be
# matched first), but allow Kerberos V connections from anywhere else
# on the Internet. The zero mask means that no bits of the host IP
# address are considered so it matches any host.
#
# TYPE DATABASE USER IP-ADDRESS IP-MASK METHOD
host all all 192.168.54.1 255.255.255.255 reject
host all all 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 krb5

# Allow users from 192.168.x.x hosts to connect to any database, if
# they pass the ident check. If, for example, ident says the user is
# "bryanh" and he requests to connect as PostgreSQL user "guest1", the
# connection is allowed if there is an entry in pg_ident.conf for map
# "omicron" that says "bryanh" is allowed to connect as "guest1".
#
# TYPE DATABASE USER IP-ADDRESS IP-MASK METHOD
host all all 192.168.0.0 255.255.0.0 ident omicron

# If these are the only three lines for local connections, they will
# allow local users to connect only to their own databases (databases
# with the same name as their user name) except for administrators and
# members of group "support" who may connect to all databases. The file
# $PGDATA/admins contains a list of user names. Passwords are required in
# all cases.
#
# TYPE DATABASE USER IP-ADDRESS IP-MASK METHOD
local sameuser all md5
local all @admins md5
local all +support md5

# The last two lines above can be combined into a single line:
local all @admins,+support md5

# The database column can also use lists and file names, but not groups:
local db1,db2,@demodbs all md5

```

## 6.2. Authentication methods

The following describes the authentication methods in more detail.

### 6.2.1. Trust authentication

When `trust` authentication is specified, PostgreSQL assumes that anyone who can connect to the server is authorized to access the database as whatever database user he specifies (including the database superuser). This method should only be used when there is adequate system-level protection on connections to the postmaster port.

`trust` authentication is appropriate and very convenient for local connections on a single-user workstation. It is usually *not* appropriate by itself on a multiuser machine. However, you may be able to use `trust` even on a multiuser machine, if you restrict access to the postmaster's socket file using file-system permissions. To do this, set the parameter `unix_socket_permissions` (and possibly `unix_socket_group`) in `postgresql.conf`, as described in Section 3.4.4. Or you could set `unix_socket_directory` to place the socket file in a suitably restricted directory.

Setting file-system permissions only helps for Unix-socket connections. Local TCP connections are not restricted by it; therefore, if you want to use permissions for local security, remove the `host . . . 127.0.0.1 . . .` line from `pg_hba.conf`, or change it to a non-`trust` authentication method.

`trust` authentication is only suitable for TCP connections if you trust every user on every machine that is allowed to connect to the server by the `pg_hba.conf` lines that specify `trust`. It is seldom reasonable to use `trust` for any TCP connections other than those from localhost (127.0.0.1).

### 6.2.2. Password authentication

Password-based authentication methods include `md5`, `crypt`, and `password`. These methods operate similarly except for the way that the password is sent across the connection. If you are at all concerned about password “sniffing” attacks then `md5` is preferred, with `crypt` a second choice if you must support pre-7.2 clients. Plain `password` should especially be avoided for connections over the open Internet (unless you use SSL, SSH, or other communications security wrappers around the connection).

PostgreSQL database passwords are separate from operating system user passwords. The password for each database user is stored in the `pg_shadow` system catalog table. Passwords can be managed with the query language commands `CREATE USER` and `ALTER USER`, e.g., **`CREATE USER foo WITH PASSWORD 'secret'`**; . By default, that is, if no password has been set up, the stored password is null and password authentication will always fail for that user.

To restrict the set of users that are allowed to connect to certain databases, list the users separated by commas, or in a separate file. The file should contain user names separated by commas or one user name per line, and be in the same directory as `pg_hba.conf`. Mention the (base) name of the file preceded with `@` in the user column. The database column can similarly accept a list of values or a file name. You can also specify group names by preceding the group name with `+`.

### 6.2.3. Kerberos authentication

Kerberos is an industry-standard secure authentication system suitable for distributed computing over a public network. A description of the Kerberos system is far beyond the scope of this document; in all generality it can be quite complex (yet powerful). The Kerberos FAQ<sup>1</sup> or MIT Project Athena<sup>2</sup> can be a good starting point for exploration. Several sources for Kerberos distributions exist.

1. <http://www.nrl.navy.mil/CCS/people/kenh/kerberos-faq.html>  
 2. <ftp://athena-dist.mit.edu>

In order to use Kerberos, support for it must be enabled at build time. See Chapter 1 for more information. Both Kerberos 4 and 5 are supported, but only one version can be supported in any one build.

PostgreSQL operates like a normal Kerberos service. The name of the service principal is *service-name/hostname@realm*, where *servicename* is *postgres* (unless a different service name was selected at configure time with `./configure --with-krb-srvnam=whatever`). *hostname* is the fully qualified domain name of the server machine. The service principal's realm is the preferred realm of the server machine.

Client principals must have their PostgreSQL user name as their first component, for example *pguser-name/otherstuff@realm*. At present the realm of the client is not checked by PostgreSQL; so if you have cross-realm authentication enabled, then any principal in any realm that can communicate with yours will be accepted.

Make sure that your server key file is readable (and preferably only readable) by the PostgreSQL server account (see Section 3.1). The location of the key file is specified with the `krb_server_keyfile` run time configuration parameter. (See also Section 3.4.) The default is `/etc/srvtab` if you are using Kerberos 4 and `FILE:/usr/local/pgsql/etc/krb5.keytab` (or whichever directory was specified as `sysconfdir` at build time) with Kerberos 5.

To generate the keytab file, use for example (with version 5)

```
kadmin% ank -randkey postgres/server.my.domain.org
kadmin% ktadd -k krb5.keytab postgres/server.my.domain.org
```

Read the Kerberos documentation for details.

When connecting to the database make sure you have a ticket for a principal matching the requested database user name. An example: For database user name `fred`, both principal `fred@EXAMPLE.COM` and `fred/users.example.com@EXAMPLE.COM` can be used to authenticate to the database server.

If you use `mod_auth_krb` and `mod_perl` on your Apache web server, you can use `AuthType KerberosV5SaveCredentials` with a `mod_perl` script. This gives secure database access over the web, no extra passwords required.

## 6.2.4. Ident-based authentication

The ident authentication method works by inspecting the client's operating system user name and determining the allowed database user names by using a map file that lists the permitted corresponding user name pairs. The determination of the client's user name is the security-critical point, and it works differently depending on the connection type.

### 6.2.4.1. Ident Authentication over TCP/IP

The "Identification Protocol" is described in *RFC 1413*. Virtually every Unix-like operating system ships with an ident server that listens on TCP port 113 by default. The basic functionality of an ident server is to answer questions like "What user initiated the connection that goes out of your port *X* and connects to my port *Y*?". Since PostgreSQL knows both *X* and *Y* when a physical connection is established, it can interrogate the ident server on the host of the connecting client and could theoretically determine the operating system user for any given connection this way.

The drawback of this procedure is that it depends on the integrity of the client: if the client machine is untrusted or compromised an attacker could run just about any program on port 113 and return any user name he chooses. This authentication method is therefore only appropriate for closed networks where each client machine is under tight control and where the database and system administrators operate in close contact. In other words, you must trust the machine running the ident server. Heed the warning:

RFC 1413

The Identification Protocol is not intended as an authorization or access control protocol.

#### 6.2.4.2. Ident Authentication over Local Sockets

On systems supporting `SO_PEERCREC` requests for Unix-domain sockets (currently Linux, FreeBSD, NetBSD, and BSD/OS), ident authentication can also be applied to local connections. In this case, no security risk is added by using ident authentication; indeed it is a preferable choice for local connections on such systems.

On systems without `SO_PEERCREC` requests, ident authentication is only available for TCP/IP connections. As a work around, it is possible to specify the localhost address 127.0.0.1 and make connections to this address.

#### 6.2.4.3. Ident Maps

When using ident-based authentication, after having determined the name of the operating system user that initiated the connection, PostgreSQL checks whether that user is allowed to connect as the database user he is requesting to connect as. This is controlled by the ident map argument that follows the `ident` keyword in the `pg_hba.conf` file. There is a predefined ident map `sameuser`, which allows any operating system user to connect as the database user of the same name (if the latter exists). Other maps must be created manually.

Ident maps other than `sameuser` are defined in the file `pg_ident.conf` in the data directory, which contains lines of the general form:

```
map-name ident-username database-username
```

Comments and whitespace are handled in the usual way. The *map-name* is an arbitrary name that will be used to refer to this mapping in `pg_hba.conf`. The other two fields specify which operating system user is allowed to connect as which database user. The same *map-name* can be used repeatedly to specify more user-mappings within a single map. There is no restriction regarding how many database users a given operating system user may correspond to and vice versa.

The `pg_ident.conf` file is read on start-up and when the postmaster receives a SIGHUP signal. If you edit the file on an active system, you will need to signal the postmaster (using `pg_ctl reload` or `kill -HUP`) to make it re-read the file.

A `pg_ident.conf` file that could be used in conjunction with the `pg_hba.conf` file in Example 6-1 is shown in Example 6-2. In this example setup, anyone logged in to a machine on the 192.168 network that does not have the Unix user name bryanh, ann, or robert would not be granted access. Unix user robert would only be allowed access when he tries to connect as PostgreSQL user bob, not as robert or anyone

else, ann would only be allowed to connect as ann. User bryanh would be allowed to connect as either bryanh himself or as guest1.

**Example 6-2. An example pg\_ident.conf file**

```
# MAPNAME      IDENT-USERNAME  PG-USERNAME

omicron        bryanh          bryanh
omicron        ann             ann
# bob has user name robert on these machines
omicron        robert         bob
# bryanh can also connect as guest1
omicron        bryanh        guest1
```

### 6.2.5. PAM Authentication

This authentication type operates similarly to *password* except that it uses PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules) as the authentication mechanism. The default PAM service name is `postgresql`. You can optionally supply your own service name after the `pam` keyword in the file. For more information about PAM, please read the [Linux-PAM Page](#)<sup>3</sup> and the [Solaris PAM Page](#)<sup>4</sup>.

## 6.3. Authentication problems

Genuine authentication failures and related problems generally manifest themselves through error messages like the following.

```
No pg_hba.conf entry for host 123.123.123.123, user andym, database testdb
```

This is what you are most likely to get if you succeed in contacting the server, but it does not want to talk to you. As the message suggests, the server refused the connection request because it found no authorizing entry in its `pg_hba.conf` configuration file.

```
Password authentication failed for user 'andym'
```

Messages like this indicate that you contacted the server, and it is willing to talk to you, but not until you pass the authorization method specified in the `pg_hba.conf` file. Check the password you are providing, or check your Kerberos or ident software if the complaint mentions one of those authentication types.

```
FATAL 1: user "andym" does not exist
```

The indicated user name was not found.

```
FATAL 1: Database "testdb" does not exist in the system catalog.
```

3. <http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/libs/pam/>

4. <http://www.sun.com/software/solaris/pam/>

The database you are trying to connect to does not exist. Note that if you do not specify a database name, it defaults to the database user name, which may or may not be the right thing.

Note that the server log may contain more information about an authentication failure than is reported to the client. If you are confused about the reason for a failure, check the log.

# Chapter 7. Localization

Describes the available localization features from the point of view of the administrator.

PostgreSQL supports localization with three approaches:

- Using the locale features of the operating system to provide locale-specific collation order, number formatting, translated messages, and other aspects.
- Using explicit multiple-byte character sets defined in the PostgreSQL server to support languages that require more characters than will fit into a single byte, and to provide character set recoding between client and server. The number of supported character sets is fixed at the time the server is compiled, and internal operations such as string comparisons require expansion of each character into a 32-bit word.
- Single byte character recoding provides a more light-weight solution for users of multiple, yet single-byte character sets.

## 7.1. Locale Support

*Locale* support refers to an application respecting cultural preferences regarding alphabets, sorting, number formatting, etc. PostgreSQL uses the standard ISO C and POSIX-like locale facilities provided by the server operating system. For additional information refer to the documentation of your system.

### 7.1.1. Overview

Locale support is automatically initialized when a database cluster is created using `initdb`. `initdb` will initialize the database cluster with the locale setting of its execution environment; so if your system is already set to use the locale that you want in your database cluster then there is nothing else you need to do. If you want to use a different locale (or you are not sure which locale your system is set to), you can tell `initdb` exactly which locale you want with the option `--locale`. For example:

```
$ initdb --locale=sv_SE
```

This example sets the locale to Swedish (`sv`) as spoken in Sweden (`SE`). Other possibilities might be `en_US` (U.S. English) and `fr_CA` (Canada, French). If more than one character set can be useful for a locale then the specifications look like this: `cs_CZ.ISO8859-2`. What locales are available under what names on your system depends on what was provided by the operating system vendor and what was installed.

Occasionally it is useful to mix rules from several locales, e.g., use U.S. collation rules but Spanish messages. To support that, a set of locale subcategories exist that control only a certain aspect of the localization rules.

LC_COLLATE	String sort order
LC_CTYPE	Character classification (What is a letter? The upper-case equivalent?)
LC_MESSAGES	Language of messages
LC_MONETARY	Formatting of currency amounts
LC_NUMERIC	Formatting of numbers
LC_TIME	Formatting of dates and times

The category names translate into names of `initdb` options to override the locale choice for a specific category. For instance, to set the locale to French Canadian, but use U.S. rules for formatting currency, use `initdb --locale=fr_CA --lc-monetary=en_US`.

If you want the system to behave as if it had no locale support, use the special locale `C` or `POSIX`.

The nature of some locale categories is that their value has to be fixed for the lifetime of a database cluster. That is, once `initdb` has run, you cannot change them anymore. `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` are those categories. They affect the sort order of indexes, so they must be kept fixed, or indexes on text columns will become corrupt. PostgreSQL enforces this by recording the values of `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` that are seen by `initdb`. The server automatically adopts those two values when it is started.

The other locale categories can be changed as desired whenever the server is started by setting the runtime configuration variables that have the same name as the locale categories (see Section 3.4 for details). The defaults that are chosen by `initdb` are actually only written into the configuration file `postgresql.conf` to serve as defaults when the server is started. If you delete the assignments from `postgresql.conf` then the server will inherit the settings from the execution environment.

Note that the locale behavior of the server is determined by the environment variables seen by the server, not by the environment of any client. Therefore, be careful to configure the correct locale settings before starting the server. A consequence of this is that if client and server are set up to different locales, messages may appear in different languages depending on where they originated.

**Note:** When we speak of inheriting the locale from the execution environment, this means the following on most operating systems: For a given locale category, say the collation, the following environment variables are consulted in this order until one is found to be set: `LC_ALL`, `LC_COLLATE` (the variable corresponding to the respective category), `LANG`. If none of these environment variables are set then the locale defaults to `C`.

Some message localization libraries also look at the environment variable `LANGUAGE` which overrides all other locale settings for the purpose of setting the language of messages. If in doubt, please refer to the documentation of your operating system, in particular the `gettext` manual page, for more information.

To enable messages translated to the user's preferred language, the `--enable-nls` option must be used. This option is independent of the other locale support.

### 7.1.2. Benefits

Locale support influences in particular the following features:

- Sort order in `ORDER BY` queries.
- The `to_char` family of functions
- The `LIKE` and `~` operators for pattern matching

The only severe drawback of using the locale support in PostgreSQL is its speed. So use locale only if you actually need it. It should be noted in particular that selecting a non-C locale disables index optimizations for `LIKE` and `~` operators, which can make a huge difference in the speed of searches that use those operators.

### 7.1.3. Problems

If locale support doesn't work in spite of the explanation above, check that the locale support in your operating system is correctly configured. To check whether a given locale is installed and functional you can use Perl, for example. Perl has also support for locales and if a locale is broken `perl -v` will complain something like this:

```
$ export LC_CTYPE='not_exist'
$ perl -v
perl: warning: Setting locale failed.
perl: warning: Please check that your locale settings:
LC_ALL = (unset),
LC_CTYPE = "not_exist",
LANG = (unset)
are supported and installed on your system.
perl: warning: Falling back to the standard locale ("C").
```

Check that your locale files are in the right location. Possible locations include: `/usr/lib/locale` (Linux, Solaris), `/usr/share/locale` (Linux), `/usr/lib/nls/loc` (DUX 4.0). Check the locale man page of your system if you are not sure.

Check that PostgreSQL is actually using the locale that you think it is. `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` settings are determined at `initdb` time and cannot be changed without repeating `initdb`. Other locale settings including `LC_MESSAGES` and `LC_MONETARY` are determined by the environment the postmaster is started in, and can be changed with a simple postmaster restart. You can check the `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` settings of a database with the `contrib/pg_controldata` utility program.

The directory `src/test/locale` contains a test suite for PostgreSQL's locale support.

Client applications that handle server-side errors by parsing the text of the error message will obviously have problems when the server's messages are in a different language. If you create such an application you need to devise a plan to cope with this situation. The embedded SQL interface (`ecpg`) is also affected by this problem. It is currently recommended that servers interfacing with `ecpg` applications be configured to send messages in English.

Maintaining catalogs of message translations requires the on-going efforts of many volunteers that want to see PostgreSQL speak their preferred language well. If messages in your language is currently not available or fully translated, your assistance would be appreciated. If you want to help, refer to the *Developer's Guide* or write to the developers' mailing list.

## 7.2. Multibyte Support

**Author:** Tatsuo Ishii (<[ishii@postgresql.org](mailto:ishii@postgresql.org)>), last updated 2002-07-24. Check Tatsuo's web site<sup>1</sup> for more information.

Multibyte (MB) support is intended to allow PostgreSQL to handle multiple-byte character sets such as EUC (Extended Unix Code), Unicode, and Mule internal code. With MB enabled you can use multibyte character sets in regular expressions (regexp), LIKE, and some other functions. The default encoding system is selected while initializing your PostgreSQL installation using initdb. Note that this can be overridden when you create a database using createdb or by using the SQL command CREATE DATABASE. So you can have multiple databases each with a different encoding system. Note that MB can handle single byte characters sets such as ISO-8859-1.

Multibyte support is enabled by default since PostgreSQL version 7.3.

### 7.2.1. Supported character set encodings

Following encoding can be used as database encoding.

**Table 7-1. Character Set Encodings**

Encoding	Description
SQL_ASCII	ASCII
EUC_JP	Japanese EUC
EUC_CN	Chinese EUC
EUC_KR	Korean EUC
JOHAB	Korean EUC (Hangle base)
EUC_TW	Taiwan EUC
UNICODE	Unicode (UTF-8)
MULE_INTERNAL	Mule internal code
LATIN1	ISO 8859-1 ECMA-94 Latin Alphabet No.1
LATIN2	ISO 8859-2 ECMA-94 Latin Alphabet No.2
LATIN3	ISO 8859-3 ECMA-94 Latin Alphabet No.3
LATIN4	ISO 8859-4 ECMA-94 Latin Alphabet No.4
LATIN5	ISO 8859-9 ECMA-128 Latin Alphabet No.5

1. <http://www.sra.co.jp/people/t-ishii/PostgreSQL/>

Encoding	Description
LATIN6	ISO 8859-10 ECMA-144 Latin Alphabet No.6
LATIN7	ISO 8859-13 Latin Alphabet No.7
LATIN8	ISO 8859-14 Latin Alphabet No.8
LATIN9	ISO 8859-15 Latin Alphabet No.9
LATIN10	ISO 8859-16 ASRO SR 14111 Latin Alphabet No.10
ISO-8859-5	ECMA-113 Latin/Cyrillic
ISO-8859-6	ECMA-114 Latin/Arabic
ISO-8859-7	ECMA-118 Latin/Greek
ISO-8859-8	ECMA-121 Latin/Hebrew
KOI8	KOI8-R(U)
WIN	Windows CP1251
ALT	Windows CP866
WIN1256	Arabic Windows CP1256
TCVN	Vietnamese TCVN-5712 (Windows CP1258)
WIN874	Thai Windows CP874

**Important:** Before PostgreSQL 7.2, `LATIN5` mistakenly meant ISO 8859-5. From 7.2 on, `LATIN5` means ISO 8859-9. If you have a `LATIN5` database created on 7.1 or earlier and want to migrate to 7.2 (or later), you should be very careful about this change.

**Important:** Not all APIs supports all the encodings listed above. For example, the PostgreSQL JDBC driver does not support `MULE_INTERNAL`, `LATIN6`, `LATIN8`, and `LATIN10`.

## 7.2.2. Setting the Encoding

`initdb` defines the default encoding for a PostgreSQL installation. For example:

```
$ initdb -E EUC_JP
```

sets the default encoding to `EUC_JP` (Extended Unix Code for Japanese). Note that you can use `--encoding` instead of `-E` if you prefer to type longer option strings. If no `-E` or `--encoding` option is given, `SQL_ASCII` is used.

You can create a database with a different encoding:

```
$ createdb -E EUC_KR korean
```

will create a database named `korean` with `EUC_KR` encoding. Another way to accomplish this is to use a `SQL` command:

```
CREATE DATABASE korean WITH ENCODING = 'EUC_KR';
```

The encoding for a database is represented as an *encoding column* in the `pg_database` system catalog. You can see that by using the `-l` option or the `\l` command of `psql`.

```
$ psql -l
          List of databases
 Database | Owner  | Encoding
-----+-----+-----
 euc_cn   | t-ishii | EUC_CN
 euc_jp   | t-ishii | EUC_JP
 euc_kr   | t-ishii | EUC_KR
 euc_tw   | t-ishii | EUC_TW
 mule_internal | t-ishii | MULE_INTERNAL
 regression | t-ishii | SQL_ASCII
 templatel | t-ishii | EUC_JP
 test     | t-ishii | EUC_JP
 unicode  | t-ishii | UNICODE
(9 rows)
```

### 7.2.3. Automatic encoding conversion between server and client

PostgreSQL supports an automatic encoding conversion between server and client for some encodings. The conversion info is stored in `pg_conversion` system catalog. You can create a new conversion by using `CREATE CONVERSION`. PostgreSQL comes with some predefined conversions. They are listed in Table 7-2.

**Table 7-2. Client/Server Character Set Encodings**

Server Encoding	Available Client Encodings
SQL_ASCII	SQL_ASCII, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
EUC_JP	EUC_JP, SJIS, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
EUC_CN	EUC_CN, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
EUC_KR	EUC_KR, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
JOHAB	JOHAB, UNICODE
EUC_TW	EUC_TW, BIG5, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
LATIN1	LATIN1, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
LATIN2	LATIN2, WIN1250, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
LATIN3	LATIN3, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
LATIN4	LATIN4, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
LATIN5	LATIN5, UNICODE
LATIN6	LATIN6, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
LATIN7	LATIN7, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
LATIN8	LATIN8, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL

Server Encoding	Available Client Encodings
LATIN9	LATIN9, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
LATIN10	LATIN10, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
ISO_8859_5	ISO_8859_5, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL, WIN, ALT, KOI8
ISO_8859_6	ISO_8859_6, UNICODE
ISO_8859_7	ISO_8859_7, UNICODE
ISO_8859_8	ISO_8859_8, UNICODE
UNICODE	EUC_JP, SJIS, EUC_KR, UHC, JOHAB, EUC_CN, GBK, EUC_TW, BIG5, LATIN1 to LATIN10, ISO_8859_5, ISO_8859_6, ISO_8859_7, ISO_8859_8, WIN, ALT, KOI8, WIN1256, TCVN, WIN874, GB18030, WIN1250
MULE_INTERNAL	EUC_JP, SJIS, EUC_KR, EUC_CN, EUC_TW, BIG5, LATIN1 to LATIN5, WIN, ALT, WIN1250, BIG5, ISO_8859_5, KOI8
KOI8	ISO_8859_5, WIN, ALT, KOI8, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
WIN	ISO_8859_5, WIN, ALT, KOI8, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
ALT	ISO_8859_5, WIN, ALT, KOI8, UNICODE, MULE_INTERNAL
WIN1256	WIN1256, UNICODE
TCVN	TCVN, UNICODE
WIN874	WIN874, UNICODE

To enable the automatic encoding translation, you have to tell PostgreSQL the encoding you would like to use in the client. There are several ways to accomplish this.

- Using the `\encoding` command in `psql`. `\encoding` allows you to change client encoding on the fly. For example, to change the encoding to `SJIS`, type:

```
\encoding SJIS
```

- Using `libpq` functions. `\encoding` actually calls `PQsetClientEncoding()` for its purpose.

```
int PQsetClientEncoding(PGconn *conn, const char *encoding)
```

where `conn` is a connection to the server, and `encoding` is an encoding you want to use. If it successfully sets the encoding, it returns 0, otherwise -1. The current encoding for this connection can be shown by using:

```
int PQclientEncoding(const PGconn *conn)
```

Note that it returns the encoding ID, not a symbolic string such as `EUC_JP`. To convert an encoding ID to an encoding name, you can use:

```
char *pg_encoding_to_char(int encoding_id)
```

- Using `SET CLIENT_ENCODING TO`. Setting the client encoding can be done with this SQL command:

```
SET CLIENT_ENCODING TO 'encoding';
```

Also you can use the SQL92 syntax `SET NAMES` for this purpose:

```
SET NAMES 'encoding';
```

To query the current client encoding:

```
SHOW CLIENT_ENCODING;
```

To return to the default encoding:

```
RESET CLIENT_ENCODING;
```

- Using `PGCLIENTENCODING`. If environment variable `PGCLIENTENCODING` is defined in the client's environment, that client encoding is automatically selected when a connection to the server is made. (This can subsequently be overridden using any of the other methods mentioned above.)
- Using `client_encoding` variable. If the `client_encoding` variable in `postgresql.conf` is set, that client encoding is automatically selected when a connection to the server is made. (This can subsequently be overridden using any of the other methods mentioned above.)

#### 7.2.4. What happens if the translation is not possible?

Suppose you choose `EUC_JP` for the server and `LATIN1` for the client, then some Japanese characters cannot be translated into `LATIN1`. In this case, a letter that cannot be represented in the `LATIN1` character set would be transformed as:

```
(HEXA DECIMAL)
```

#### 7.2.5. References

These are good sources to start learning about various kinds of encoding systems.

<ftp://ftp.ora.com/pub/examples/nutshell/ujip/doc/cjk.inf>

Detailed explanations of `EUC_JP`, `EUC_CN`, `EUC_KR`, `EUC_TW` appear in section 3.2.

<http://www.unicode.org/>

The web site of the Unicode Consortium

RFC 2044

UTF-8 is defined here.

## 7.2.6. History

Dec 7, 2000

- \* An automatic encoding translation between Unicode and other encodings are implemented
- \* Changes above will appear in 7.1

May 20, 2000

- \* SJIS UDC (NEC selection IBM kanji) support contributed by Eiji Tokuya
- \* Changes above will appear in 7.0.1

Mar 22, 2000

- \* Add new libpq functions PQsetClientEncoding, PQclientEncoding
- \* `./configure --with-mb=EUC_JP` now deprecated. use `./configure --enable-multibyte=EUC_JP` instead
- \* Add SQL\_ASCII regression test case
- \* Add SJIS User Defined Character (UDC) support
- \* All of above will appear in 7.0

July 11, 1999

- \* Add support for WIN1250 (Windows Czech) as a client encoding (contributed by Pavel Behal)
- \* fix some compiler warnings (contributed by Tomoaki Nishiyama)

Mar 23, 1999

- \* Add support for KOI8(KOI8-R), WIN(CP1251), ALT(CP866) (thanks Oleg Broytmann for testing)
- \* Fix problem with MB and locale

Jan 26, 1999

- \* Add support for Big5 for frontend encoding (you need to create a database with EUC\_TW to use Big5)
- \* Add regression test case for EUC\_TW (contributed by Jonah Kuo <jonahkuo@mail.ttn.com.tw>)

Dec 15, 1998

- \* Bugs related to SQL\_ASCII support fixed

Nov 5, 1998

- \* 6.4 release. In this version, `pg_database` has "encoding" column that represents the database encoding

Jul 22, 1998

- \* determine encoding at `initdb/createdb` rather than compile time
- \* support for `PGCLIENTENCODING` when issuing `COPY` command
- \* support for SQL92 syntax "SET NAMES"
- \* support for LATIN2-5
- \* add UNICODE regression test case
- \* new test suite for MB
- \* clean up source files

Jun 5, 1998

- \* add support for the encoding translation between the backend and the frontend
- \* new command SET CLIENT\_ENCODING etc. added
- \* add support for LATIN1 character set
- \* enhance 8-bit cleanliness

April 21, 1998 some enhancements/fixes

- \* character\_length(), position(), substring() are now aware of multi-byte characters
- \* add octet\_length()
- \* add --with-mb option to configure
- \* new regression tests for EUC\_KR  
(contributed by Soonmyung Hong)
- \* add some test cases to the EUC\_JP regression test
- \* fix problem in regress/regress.sh in case of System V
- \* fix toupper(), tolower() to handle 8bit chars

Mar 25, 1998 MB PL2 is incorporated into PostgreSQL 6.3.1

Mar 10, 1998 PL2 released

- \* add regression test for EUC\_JP, EUC\_CN and MULE\_INTERNAL
- \* add an English document (this file)
- \* fix problems concerning 8-bit single byte characters

Mar 1, 1998 PL1 released

### 7.2.7. WIN1250 on Windows/ODBC

The WIN1250 character set on Windows client platforms can be used with PostgreSQL with locale support enabled.

The following should be kept in mind:

- Success depends on proper system locales. This has been tested with Red Hat 6.0 and Slackware 3.6, with the `cs_CZ.iso8859-2` locale.
- Never try to set the server's database encoding to WIN1250. Always use LATIN2 instead since there is no WIN1250 locale in Unix.
- The WIN1250 encoding is usable only for Windows ODBC clients. The characters are recoded on the fly, to be displayed and stored back properly.

#### WIN1250 on Windows/ODBC

1. Compile PostgreSQL with locale enabled and the server-side encoding set to LATIN2.
2. Set up your installation. Do not forget to create locale variables in your environment. For example (this may not be correct for *your* environment):

```
LC_ALL=cs_CZ.ISO8859-2
```

3. You have to start the server with locales set!
4. Try it with the Czech language, and have it sort on a query.
5. Install ODBC driver for PostgreSQL on your Windows machine.
6. Set up your data source properly. Include this line in your ODBC configuration dialog in the field Connect Settings:

```
SET CLIENT_ENCODING = 'WIN1250';
```

7. Now try it again, but in Windows with ODBC.

### 7.3. Single-byte character set recoding

You can set up this feature with the `--enable-recode` option to `configure`. This option was formerly described as “Cyrillic recode support” which doesn’t express all its power. It can be used for *any* single-byte character set recoding.

This method uses a file `charset.conf` file located in the database directory (`PGDATA`). It’s a typical configuration text file where spaces and newlines separate items and records and `#` specifies comments. Three keywords with the following syntax are recognized here:

```
BaseCharset      server_charset
RecodeTable     from_charset to_charset file_name
HostCharset     host_spec   host_charset
```

`BaseCharset` defines the encoding of the database server. All character set names are only used for mapping inside of `charset.conf` so you can freely use typing-friendly names.

`RecodeTable` records specify translation tables between server and client. The file name is relative to the `PGDATA` directory. The table file format is very simple. There are no keywords and characters are represented by a pair of decimal or hexadecimal (0x prefixed) values on single lines:

```
char_value   translated_char_value
```

`HostCharset` records define the client character set by IP address. You can use a single IP address, an IP mask range starting from the given address or an IP interval (e.g., 127.0.0.1, 192.168.1.100/24, 192.168.1.20-192.168.1.40).

The `charset.conf` file is always processed up to the end, so you can easily specify exceptions from the previous rules. In the `src/data/` directory you will find an example `charset.conf` and a few recoding tables.

As this solution is based on the client’s IP address and character set mapping there are obviously some restrictions as well. You cannot use different encodings on the same host at the same time. It is also

inconvenient when you boot your client hosts into multiple operating systems. Nevertheless, when these restrictions are not limiting and you do not need multibyte characters then it is a simple and effective solution.

# Chapter 8. Routine Database Maintenance Tasks

## 8.1. General Discussion

There are a few routine maintenance chores that must be performed on a regular basis to keep a PostgreSQL installation running smoothly. The tasks discussed here are repetitive in nature and can easily be automated using standard Unix tools such as cron scripts. But it is the database administrator's responsibility to set up appropriate scripts, and to check that they execute successfully.

One obvious maintenance task is creation of backup copies of the data on a regular schedule. Without a recent backup, you have no chance of recovery after a catastrophe (disk failure, fire, mistakenly dropping a critical table, etc). The backup and recovery mechanisms available in PostgreSQL are discussed at length in Chapter 9.

The other main category of maintenance task is periodic "vacuuming" of the database. This activity is discussed in Section 8.2.

Something else that might need periodic attention is log file management. This is discussed in Section 8.4.

PostgreSQL is low-maintenance compared to some other database products. Nonetheless, appropriate attention to these tasks will go far towards ensuring a pleasant and productive experience with the system.

## 8.2. Routine Vacuuming

PostgreSQL's `VACUUM` command must be run on a regular basis for several reasons:

1. To recover disk space occupied by updated or deleted rows.
2. To update data statistics used by the PostgreSQL query planner.
3. To protect against loss of very old data due to *transaction ID wraparound*.

The frequency and scope of `VACUUMS` performed for each of these reasons will vary depending on the needs of each installation. Therefore, database administrators must understand these issues and develop an appropriate maintenance strategy. This section concentrates on explaining the high-level issues; for details about command syntax and so on, see the `VACUUM` command reference page.

Beginning in PostgreSQL 7.2, the standard form of `VACUUM` can run in parallel with normal database operations (selects, inserts, updates, deletes, but not changes to table schemas). Routine vacuuming is therefore not nearly as intrusive as it was in prior releases, and it's not as critical to try to schedule it at low-usage times of day.

### 8.2.1. Recovering disk space

In normal PostgreSQL operation, an `UPDATE` or `DELETE` of a row does not immediately remove the old *tuple* (version of the row). This approach is necessary to gain the benefits of multiversion concurrency control (see the *PostgreSQL User's Guide*): the tuple must not be deleted while it is still potentially

visible to other transactions. But eventually, an outdated or deleted tuple is no longer of interest to any transaction. The space it occupies must be reclaimed for reuse by new tuples, to avoid infinite growth of disk space requirements. This is done by running `VACUUM`.

Clearly, a table that receives frequent updates or deletes will need to be vacuumed more often than tables that are seldom updated. It may be useful to set up periodic cron tasks that vacuum only selected tables, skipping tables that are known not to change often. This is only likely to be helpful if you have both large heavily-updated tables and large seldom-updated tables --- the extra cost of vacuuming a small table isn't enough to be worth worrying about.

The standard form of `VACUUM` is best used with the goal of maintaining a fairly level steady-state usage of disk space. The standard form finds old tuples and makes their space available for re-use within the table, but it does not try very hard to shorten the table file and return disk space to the operating system. If you need to return disk space to the operating system you can use `VACUUM FULL` --- but what's the point of releasing disk space that will only have to be allocated again soon? Moderately frequent standard `VACUUMS` are a better approach than infrequent `VACUUM FULLS` for maintaining heavily-updated tables.

Recommended practice for most sites is to schedule a database-wide `VACUUM` once a day at a low-usage time of day, supplemented by more frequent vacuuming of heavily-updated tables if necessary. (If you have multiple databases in an installation, don't forget to vacuum each one; the `vacuumdb` script may be helpful.) Use plain `VACUUM`, not `VACUUM FULL`, for routine vacuuming for space recovery.

`VACUUM FULL` is recommended for cases where you know you have deleted the majority of tuples in a table, so that the steady-state size of the table can be shrunk substantially with `VACUUM FULL`'s more aggressive approach.

If you have a table whose contents are deleted completely every so often, consider doing it with `TRUNCATE` rather than using `DELETE` followed by `VACUUM`.

### 8.2.2. Updating planner statistics

The PostgreSQL query planner relies on statistical information about the contents of tables in order to generate good plans for queries. These statistics are gathered by the `ANALYZE` command, which can be invoked by itself or as an optional step in `VACUUM`. It is important to have reasonably accurate statistics, otherwise poor choices of plans may degrade database performance.

As with vacuuming for space recovery, frequent updates of statistics are more useful for heavily-updated tables than for seldom-updated ones. But even for a heavily-updated table, there may be no need for statistics updates if the statistical distribution of the data is not changing much. A simple rule of thumb is to think about how much the minimum and maximum values of the columns in the table change. For example, a `timestamp` column that contains the time of row update will have a constantly-increasing maximum value as rows are added and updated; such a column will probably need more frequent statistics updates than, say, a column containing URLs for pages accessed on a website. The URL column may receive changes just as often, but the statistical distribution of its values probably changes relatively slowly.

It is possible to run `ANALYZE` on specific tables and even just specific columns of a table, so the flexibility exists to update some statistics more frequently than others if your application requires it. In practice, however, the usefulness of this feature is doubtful. Beginning in PostgreSQL 7.2, `ANALYZE` is a fairly fast operation even on large tables, because it uses a statistical random sampling of the rows of a table rather than reading every single row. So it's probably much simpler to just run it over the whole database every so often.

**Tip:** Although per-column tweaking of `ANALYZE` frequency may not be very productive, you may well find it worthwhile to do per-column adjustment of the level of detail of the statistics collected by `ANALYZE`. Columns that are heavily used in `WHERE` clauses and have highly irregular data distributions may require a finer-grain data histogram than other columns. See `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS`.

Recommended practice for most sites is to schedule a database-wide `ANALYZE` once a day at a low-usage time of day; this can usefully be combined with a nightly `VACUUM`. However, sites with relatively slowly changing table statistics may find that this is overkill, and that less-frequent `ANALYZE` runs are sufficient.

### 8.2.3. Preventing transaction ID wraparound failures

PostgreSQL's MVCC transaction semantics depend on being able to compare transaction ID (`XID`) numbers: a tuple with an insertion `XID` newer than the current transaction's `XID` is "in the future" and should not be visible to the current transaction. But since transaction IDs have limited size (32 bits at this writing) an installation that runs for a long time (more than 4 billion transactions) will suffer *transaction ID wraparound*: the `XID` counter wraps around to zero, and all of a sudden transactions that were in the past appear to be in the future --- which means their outputs become invisible. In short, catastrophic data loss. (Actually the data is still there, but that's cold comfort if you can't get at it.)

Prior to PostgreSQL 7.2, the only defense against `XID` wraparound was to `re-initdb` at least every 4 billion transactions. This of course was not very satisfactory for high-traffic sites, so a better solution has been devised. The new approach allows an installation to remain up indefinitely, without `initdb` or any sort of restart. The price is this maintenance requirement: *every table in the database must be vacuumed at least once every billion transactions.*

In practice this isn't an onerous requirement, but since the consequences of failing to meet it can be complete data loss (not just wasted disk space or slow performance), some special provisions have been made to help database administrators keep track of the time since the last `VACUUM`. The remainder of this section gives the details.

The new approach to `XID` comparison distinguishes two special `XIDs`, numbers 1 and 2 (`BootstrapXID` and `FrozenXID`). These two `XIDs` are always considered older than every normal `XID`. Normal `XIDs` (those greater than 2) are compared using modulo- $2^{31}$  arithmetic. This means that for every normal `XID`, there are two billion `XIDs` that are "older" and two billion that are "newer"; another way to say it is that the normal `XID` space is circular with no endpoint. Therefore, once a tuple has been created with a particular normal `XID`, the tuple will appear to be "in the past" for the next two billion transactions, no matter which normal `XID` we are talking about. If the tuple still exists after more than two billion transactions, it will suddenly appear to be in the future. To prevent data loss, old tuples must be reassigned the `XID FrozenXID` sometime before they reach the two-billion-transactions-old mark. Once they are assigned this special `XID`, they will appear to be "in the past" to all normal transactions regardless of wraparound issues, and so such tuples will be good until deleted, no matter how long that is. This reassignment of `XID` is handled by `VACUUM`.

`VACUUM`'s normal policy is to reassign `FrozenXID` to any tuple with a normal `XID` more than one billion transactions in the past. This policy preserves the original insertion `XID` until it is not likely to be of interest anymore (in fact, most tuples will probably live and die without ever being "frozen"). With this policy, the maximum safe interval between `VACUUMS` of any table is exactly one billion transactions: if you wait longer, it's possible that a tuple that was not quite old enough to be reassigned last time is now more

than two billion transactions old and has wrapped around into the future --- i.e., is lost to you. (Of course, it'll reappear after another two billion transactions, but that's no help.)

Since periodic `VACUUMS` are needed anyway for the reasons described earlier, it's unlikely that any table would not be vacuumed for as long as a billion transactions. But to help administrators ensure this constraint is met, `VACUUM` stores transaction ID statistics in the system table `pg_database`. In particular, the `datfrozenxid` field of a database's `pg_database` row is updated at the completion of any database-wide vacuum operation (i.e., `VACUUM` that does not name a specific table). The value stored in this field is the freeze cutoff `XID` that was used by that `VACUUM` command. All normal `XIDs` older than this cutoff `XID` are guaranteed to have been replaced by `FrozenXID` within that database. A convenient way to examine this information is to execute the query

```
SELECT datname, age(datfrozenxid) FROM pg_database;
```

The `age` column measures the number of transactions from the cutoff `XID` to the current transaction's `XID`.

With the standard freezing policy, the `age` column will start at one billion for a freshly-vacuumed database. When the `age` approaches two billion, the database must be vacuumed again to avoid risk of wraparound failures. Recommended practice is to vacuum each database at least once every half-a-billion (500 million) transactions, so as to provide plenty of safety margin. To help meet this rule, each database-wide `VACUUM` automatically delivers a warning if there are any `pg_database` entries showing an `age` of more than 1.5 billion transactions, for example:

```
play=# vacuum;
WARNING:  Some databases have not been vacuumed in 1613770184 transactions.
         Better vacuum them within 533713463 transactions,
         or you may have a wraparound failure.
VACUUM
```

`VACUUM` with the `FREEZE` option uses a more aggressive freezing policy: tuples are frozen if they are old enough to be considered good by all open transactions. In particular, if a `VACUUM FREEZE` is performed in an otherwise-idle database, it is guaranteed that *all* tuples in that database will be frozen. Hence, as long as the database is not modified in any way, it will not need subsequent vacuuming to avoid transaction ID wraparound problems. This technique is used by `initdb` to prepare the `template0` database. It should also be used to prepare any user-created databases that are to be marked `dataallowconn = false` in `pg_database`, since there isn't any convenient way to vacuum a database that you can't connect to. Note that `VACUUM`'s automatic warning message about unvacuumed databases will ignore `pg_database` entries with `dataallowconn = false`, so as to avoid giving false warnings about these databases; therefore it's up to you to ensure that such databases are frozen correctly.

### 8.3. Routine Reindexing

PostgreSQL is unable to reuse B-tree index pages in certain cases. The problem is that if indexed rows are deleted, those index pages can only be reused by rows with similar values. For example, if indexed rows are deleted and newly inserted/updated rows have much higher values, the new rows can't use the index

space made available by the deleted rows. Instead, such new rows must be placed on new index pages. In such cases, disk space used by the index will grow indefinitely, even if `VACUUM` is run frequently.

As a solution, you can use the `REINDEX` command periodically to discard pages used by deleted rows. There is also `contrib/reindexdb` which can reindex an entire database.

## 8.4. Log File Maintenance

It's a good idea to save the database server's log output somewhere, rather than just routing it to `/dev/null`. The log output is invaluable when it comes time to diagnose problems. However, the log output tends to be voluminous (especially at higher debug levels) and you won't want to save it indefinitely. You need to "rotate" the log files so that new log files are started and old ones thrown away every so often.

If you simply direct the postmaster's `stderr` into a file, the only way to truncate the log file is to stop and restart the postmaster. This may be OK for development setups but you won't want to run a production server that way.

The simplest production-grade approach to managing log output is to send it all to `syslog` and let `syslog` deal with file rotation. To do this, set `syslog` to 2 (log to `syslog` only) in `postgresql.conf`. Then you can send a `SIGHUP` signal to the `syslog` daemon whenever you want to force it to start writing a new log file.

On many systems, however, `syslog` is not very reliable, particularly with large log messages; it may truncate or drop messages just when you need them the most. You may find it more useful to pipe the postmaster's `stderr` to some type of log rotation script. If you start the postmaster with `pg_ctl`, then the postmaster's `stderr` is already redirected to `stdout`, so you just need a pipe command:

```
pg_ctl start | logrotate
```

The PostgreSQL distribution doesn't include a suitable log rotation program, but there are many available on the net; one is included in the Apache distribution, for example.

# Chapter 9. Backup and Restore

As everything that contains valuable data, PostgreSQL databases should be backed up regularly. While the procedure is essentially simple, it is important to have a basic understanding of the underlying techniques and assumptions.

There are two fundamentally different approaches to backing up PostgreSQL data:

- SQL dump
- File system level backup

## 9.1. SQL Dump

The idea behind the SQL-dump method is to generate a text file with SQL commands that, when fed back to the server, will recreate the database in the same state as it was at the time of the dump. PostgreSQL provides the utility program `pg_dump` for this purpose. The basic usage of this command is:

```
pg_dump dbname > outfile
```

As you see, `pg_dump` writes its results to the standard output. We will see below how this can be useful.

`pg_dump` is a regular PostgreSQL client application (albeit a particularly clever one). This means that you can do this backup procedure from any remote host that has access to the database. But remember that `pg_dump` does not operate with special permissions. In particular, you must have read access to all tables that you want to back up, so in practice you almost always have to be a database superuser.

To specify which database server `pg_dump` should contact, use the command line options `-h host` and `-p port`. The default host is the local host or whatever your `PGHOST` environment variable specifies. Similarly, the default port is indicated by the `PGPORT` environment variable or, failing that, by the compiled-in default. (Conveniently, the server will normally have the same compiled-in default.)

As any other PostgreSQL client application, `pg_dump` will by default connect with the database user name that is equal to the current operating system user name. To override this, either specify the `-U` option or set the environment variable `PGUSER`. Remember that `pg_dump` connections are subject to the normal client authentication mechanisms (which are described in Chapter 6).

Dumps created by `pg_dump` are internally consistent, that is, updates to the database while `pg_dump` is running will not be in the dump. `pg_dump` does not block other operations on the database while it is working. (Exceptions are those operations that need to operate with an exclusive lock, such as `VACUUM FULL`.)

**Important:** When your database schema relies on OIDs (for instance as foreign keys) you must instruct `pg_dump` to dump the OIDs as well. To do this, use the `-o` command line option. “Large objects” are not dumped by default, either. See `pg_dump`’s command reference page if you use large objects.

### 9.1.1. Restoring the dump

The text files created by `pg_dump` are intended to be read in by the `psql` program. The general command form to restore a dump is

```
psql dbname < infile
```

where *infile* is what you used as *outfile* for the `pg_dump` command. The database *dbname* will not be created by this command, you must create it yourself from `template0` before executing `psql` (e.g., with `createdb -T template0 dbname`). `psql` supports similar options to `pg_dump` for controlling the database server location and the user names. See its reference page for more information.

If the objects in the original database were owned by different users, then the dump will instruct `psql` to connect as each affected user in turn and then create the relevant objects. This way the original ownership is preserved. This also means, however, that all these users must already exist, and furthermore that you must be allowed to connect as each of them. It might therefore be necessary to temporarily relax the client authentication settings.

The ability of `pg_dump` and `psql` to write to or read from pipes makes it possible to dump a database directly from one server to another, for example

```
pg_dump -h host1 dbname | psql -h host2 dbname
```

**Important:** The dumps produced by `pg_dump` are relative to `template0`. This means that any languages, procedures, etc. added to `template1` will also be dumped by `pg_dump`. As a result, when restoring, if you are using a customized `template1`, you must create the empty database from `template0`, as in the example above.

### 9.1.2. Using `pg_dumpall`

The above mechanism is cumbersome and inappropriate when backing up an entire database cluster. For this reason the `pg_dumpall` program is provided. `pg_dumpall` backs up each database in a given cluster and also makes sure that the state of global data such as users and groups is preserved. The call sequence for `pg_dumpall` is simply

```
pg_dumpall > outfile
```

The resulting dumps can be restored with `psql` as described above. But in this case it is definitely necessary that you have database superuser access, as that is required to restore the user and group information.

### 9.1.3. Large Databases

**Acknowledgement:** Originally written by Hannu Krosing (<hannu@trust.ee>) on 1999-06-19

Since PostgreSQL allows tables larger than the maximum file size on your system, it can be problematic to dump the table to a file, since the resulting file will likely be larger than the maximum size allowed by your system. As `pg_dump` writes to the standard output, you can just use standard \*nix tools to work around this possible problem.

**Use compressed dumps.** Use your favorite compression program, for example `gzip`.

```
pg_dump dbname | gzip > filename.gz
```

Reload with

```
createdb dbname
gunzip -c filename.gz | psql dbname
```

or

```
cat filename.gz | gunzip | psql dbname
```

**Use split.** This allows you to split the output into pieces that are acceptable in size to the underlying file system. For example, to make chunks of 1 megabyte:

```
pg_dump dbname | split -b 1m - filename
```

Reload with

```
createdb dbname
cat filename* | psql dbname
```

**Use the custom dump format.** If PostgreSQL was built on a system with the `zlib` compression library installed, the custom dump format will compress data as it writes it to the output file. For large databases, this will produce similar dump sizes to using `gzip`, but has the added advantage that the tables can be restored selectively. The following command dumps a database using the custom dump format:

```
pg_dump -Fc dbname > filename
```

See the `pg_dump` and `pg_restore` reference pages for details.

#### 9.1.4. Caveats

`pg_dump` (and by implication `pg_dumpall`) has a few limitations which stem from the difficulty to reconstruct certain information from the system catalogs.

Specifically, the order in which `pg_dump` writes the objects is not very sophisticated. This can lead to problems for example when functions are used as column default values. The only answer is to manually reorder the dump. If you created circular dependencies in your schema then you will have more work to do.

For reasons of backward compatibility, `pg_dump` does not dump large objects by default. To dump large objects you must use either the custom or the TAR output format, and use the `-b` option in `pg_dump`. See the reference pages for details. The directory `contrib/pg_dumplo` of the PostgreSQL source tree also contains a program that can dump large objects.

Please familiarize yourself with the `pg_dump` reference page.

## 9.2. File system level backup

An alternative backup strategy is to directly copy the files that PostgreSQL uses to store the data in the database. In Section 3.2 it is explained where these files are located, but you have probably found them already if you are interested in this method. You can use whatever method you prefer for doing usual file system backups, for example

```
tar -cf backup.tar /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

There are two restrictions, however, which make this method impractical, or at least inferior to the `pg_dump` method:

1. The database server *must* be shut down in order to get a usable backup. Half-way measures such as disallowing all connections will not work as there is always some buffering going on. For this reason it is also not advisable to trust file systems that claim to support “consistent snapshots”. Information about stopping the server can be found in Section 3.6.

Needless to say that you also need to shut down the server before restoring the data.

2. If you have dug into the details of the file system layout you may be tempted to try to back up or restore only certain individual tables or databases from their respective files or directories. This will *not* work because the information contained in these files contains only half the truth. The other half is in the commit log files `pg_clog/*`, which contain the commit status of all transactions. A table file is only usable with this information. Of course it is also impossible to restore only a table and the associated `pg_clog` data because that will render all other tables in the database cluster useless.

Also note that the file system backup will not necessarily be smaller than an SQL dump. On the contrary, it will most likely be larger. (`pg_dump` does not need to dump the contents of indexes for example, just the commands to recreate them.)

## 9.3. Migration between releases

As a general rule, the internal data storage format is subject to change between releases of PostgreSQL. This does not apply to different “patch levels”, these always have compatible storage formats. For example, releases 7.0.1, 7.1.2, and 7.2 are not compatible, whereas 7.1.1 and 7.1.2 are. When you update between compatible versions, then you can simply reuse the data area in disk by the new executables. Otherwise you need to “back up” your data and “restore” it on the new server, using `pg_dump`. (There are checks in place that prevent you from doing the wrong thing, so no harm can be done by confusing these things.) The precise installation procedure is not subject of this section, these details are in Chapter 1.

The least downtime can be achieved by installing the new server in a different directory and running both the old and the new servers in parallel, on different ports. Then you can use something like

```
pg_dumpall -p 5432 | psql -d template1 -p 6543
```

to transfer your data, or use an intermediate file if you want. Then you can shut down the old server and start the new server at the port the old one was running at. You should make sure that the database is not updated after you run `pg_dumpall`, otherwise you will obviously lose that data. See Chapter 6 for information on how to prohibit access. In practice you probably want to test your client applications on the new setup before switching over.

If you cannot or do not want to run two servers in parallel you can do the back up step before installing the new version, bring down the server, move the old version out of the way, install the new version, start the new server, restore the data. For example:

```
pg_dumpall > backup
pg_ctl stop
mv /usr/local/pgsql /usr/local/pgsql.old
cd /usr/src/postgresql-7.3.2
gmake install
initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
postmaster -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
psql template1 < backup
```

See Chapter 3 about ways to start and stop the server and other details. The installation instructions will advise you of strategic places to perform these steps.

**Note:** When you “move the old installation out of the way” it is no longer perfectly usable. Some parts of the installation contain information about where the other parts are located. This is usually not a big problem but if you plan on using two installations in parallel for a while you should assign them different installation directories at build time.

# Chapter 10. Monitoring Database Activity

A database administrator frequently wonders, “What is the system doing right now?” This chapter discusses how to find that out.

Several tools are available for monitoring database activity and analyzing performance. Most of this chapter is devoted to describing PostgreSQL’s *statistics collector*, but one should not neglect regular Unix monitoring programs such as `ps` and `top`. Also, once one has identified a poorly-performing query, further investigation may be needed using PostgreSQL’s `EXPLAIN` command. The *PostgreSQL User’s Guide* discusses `EXPLAIN` and other methods for understanding the behavior of an individual query.

## 10.1. Standard Unix Tools

On most platforms, PostgreSQL modifies its command title as reported by `ps`, so that individual server processes can readily be identified. A sample display is

```
$ ps auxww | grep ^postgres
postgres  960  0.0  1.1  6104 1480 pts/1    SN   13:17   0:00 postmaster -
i
postgres  963  0.0  1.1  7084 1472 pts/1    SN   13:17   0:00 postgres: stats buffer p
cess
postgres  965  0.0  1.1  6152 1512 pts/1    SN   13:17   0:00 postgres: stats col-
lector process
postgres  998  0.0  2.3  6532 2992 pts/1    SN   13:18   0:00 postgres: tgl run-
bug 127.0.0.1 idle
postgres 1003  0.0  2.4  6532 3128 pts/1    SN   13:19   0:00 postgres: tgl re-
gression [local] SELECT waiting
postgres 1016  0.1  2.4  6532 3080 pts/1    SN   13:19   0:00 postgres: tgl re-
gression [local] idle in transaction
```

(The appropriate invocation of `ps` varies across different platforms, as do the details of what is shown. This example is from a recent Linux system.) The first process listed here is the *postmaster*, the master server process. The command arguments shown for it are the same ones given when it was launched. The next two processes implement the statistics collector, which will be described in detail in the next section. (These will not be present if you have set the system not to start the statistics collector.) Each of the remaining processes is a server process handling one client connection. Each such process sets its command line display in the form

```
postgres: user database host activity
```

The user, database, and connection source host items remain the same for the life of the client connection, but the activity indicator changes. The activity may be `idle` (i.e., waiting for a client command), `idle in transaction` (waiting for client inside a `BEGIN` block), or a command type name such as `SELECT`. Also, `waiting` is attached if the server is presently waiting on a lock held by another server process. In the above example we can infer that process 1003 is waiting for process 1016 to complete its transaction and thereby release some lock or other.

**Tip:** Solaris requires special handling. You must use `/usr/ucb/ps`, rather than `/bin/ps`. You also must use two `w` flags, not just one. In addition, your original invocation of the postmaster must have a

shorter `ps` status display than that provided by each backend. If you fail to do all three things, the `ps` output for each backend will be the original postmaster command line.

## 10.2. Statistics Collector

PostgreSQL's *statistics collector* is a subsystem that supports collection and reporting of information about server activity. Presently, the collector can count accesses to tables and indexes in both disk-block and individual-row terms. It also supports determining the exact query currently being executed by other server processes.

### 10.2.1. Statistics Collection Configuration

Since collection of statistics adds some overhead to query execution, the system can be configured to collect or not collect information. This is controlled by configuration variables that are normally set in `postgresql.conf` (see Section 3.4 for details about setting configuration variables).

The variable `STATS_START_COLLECTOR` must be set to `true` for the statistics collector to be launched at all. This is the default and recommended setting, but it may be turned off if you have no interest in statistics and want to squeeze out every last drop of overhead. (The savings is likely to be small, however.) Note that this option cannot be changed while the server is running.

The variables `STATS_COMMAND_STRING`, `STATS_BLOCK_LEVEL`, and `STATS_ROW_LEVEL` control how much information is actually sent to the collector, and thus determine how much run-time overhead occurs. These respectively determine whether a server process sends its current command string, disk-block-level access statistics, and row-level access statistics to the collector. Normally these variables are set in `postgresql.conf` so that they apply to all server processes, but it is possible to turn them on or off in individual server processes using the `SET` command. (To prevent ordinary users from hiding their activity from the administrator, only superusers are allowed to change these variables with `SET`.)

**Important:** Since the variables `STATS_COMMAND_STRING`, `STATS_BLOCK_LEVEL`, and `STATS_ROW_LEVEL` default to `false`, no statistics are actually collected in the default configuration. You must turn one or more of them on before you will get useful results from the statistical display functions.

### 10.2.2. Viewing Collected Statistics

Several predefined views are available to show the results of statistics collection, listed in Table 10-1. Alternatively, one can build custom views using the underlying statistics functions.

When using the statistics to monitor current activity, it is important to realize that the information does not update instantaneously. Each individual server process transmits new access counts to the collector just before waiting for another client command; so a query still in progress does not affect the displayed totals. Also, the collector itself emits new totals at most once per `pgstat_stat_interval` milliseconds (500 by default). So the displayed totals lag behind actual activity.

Another important point is that when a server process is asked to display any of these statistics, it first fetches the most recent totals emitted by the collector process. It then continues to use this snapshot for all statistical views and functions until the end of its current transaction. So the statistics will appear not to change as long as you continue the current transaction. This is a feature, not a bug, because it allows you to perform several queries on the statistics and correlate the results without worrying that the numbers are changing underneath you. But if you want to see new results with each query, be sure to do the queries outside any transaction block.

**Table 10-1. Standard Statistics Views**

View Name	Description
<code>pg_stat_activity</code>	One row per server process, showing process ID, database, user, and current query. The current query column is only available to superusers; for others it reads as null. (Note that because of the collector's reporting delay, current query will only be up-to-date for long-running queries.)
<code>pg_stat_database</code>	One row per database, showing number of active backends, total transactions committed and total rolled back in that database, total disk blocks read, and total number of buffer hits (i.e., block read requests avoided by finding the block already in buffer cache).
<code>pg_stat_all_tables</code>	For each table in the current database, total numbers of sequential and index scans, total numbers of tuples returned by each type of scan, and totals of tuple insertions, updates, and deletes.
<code>pg_stat_sys_tables</code>	Same as <code>pg_stat_all_tables</code> , except that only system tables are shown.
<code>pg_stat_user_tables</code>	Same as <code>pg_stat_all_tables</code> , except that only user tables are shown.
<code>pg_stat_all_indexes</code>	For each index in the current database, the total number of index scans that have used that index, the number of index tuples read, and the number of successfully fetched heap tuples. (This may be less when there are index entries pointing to expired heap tuples.)
<code>pg_stat_sys_indexes</code>	Same as <code>pg_stat_all_indexes</code> , except that only indexes on system tables are shown.
<code>pg_stat_user_indexes</code>	Same as <code>pg_stat_all_indexes</code> , except that only indexes on user tables are shown.

View Name	Description
<code>pg_statio_all_tables</code>	For each table in the current database, the total number of disk blocks read from that table, the number of buffer hits, the numbers of disk blocks read and buffer hits in all the indexes of that table, the numbers of disk blocks read and buffer hits from the table's auxiliary TOAST table (if any), and the numbers of disk blocks read and buffer hits for the TOAST table's index.
<code>pg_statio_sys_tables</code>	Same as <code>pg_statio_all_tables</code> , except that only system tables are shown.
<code>pg_statio_user_tables</code>	Same as <code>pg_statio_all_tables</code> , except that only user tables are shown.
<code>pg_statio_all_indexes</code>	For each index in the current database, the numbers of disk blocks read and buffer hits in that index.
<code>pg_statio_sys_indexes</code>	Same as <code>pg_statio_all_indexes</code> , except that only indexes on system tables are shown.
<code>pg_statio_user_indexes</code>	Same as <code>pg_statio_all_indexes</code> , except that only indexes on user tables are shown.
<code>pg_statio_all_sequences</code>	For each sequence object in the current database, the numbers of disk blocks read and buffer hits in that sequence.
<code>pg_statio_sys_sequences</code>	Same as <code>pg_statio_all_sequences</code> , except that only system sequences are shown. (Presently, no system sequences are defined, so this view is always empty.)
<code>pg_statio_user_sequences</code>	Same as <code>pg_statio_all_sequences</code> , except that only user sequences are shown.

The per-index statistics are particularly useful to determine which indexes are being used and how effective they are.

The `pg_statio_` views are primarily useful to determine the effectiveness of the buffer cache. When the number of actual disk reads is much smaller than the number of buffer hits, then the cache is satisfying most read requests without invoking a kernel call.

Other ways of looking at the statistics can be set up by writing queries that use the same underlying statistics access functions as these standard views do. These functions are listed in Table 10-2. The per-database access functions accept a database OID to identify which database to report on. The per-table and per-index functions accept a table or index OID (note that only tables and indexes in the current database can be seen with these functions). The per-backend access functions accept a backend ID number, which ranges from one to the number of currently active backends.

**Table 10-2. Statistics Access Functions**

Function	Return Type	Description
----------	-------------	-------------

Function	Return Type	Description
pg_stat_get_db_numbackends(oid)	integer	Number of active backends in database
pg_stat_get_db_xact_commit(oid)	bigint	Transactions committed in database
pg_stat_get_db_xact_rollback(oid)	bigint	Transactions rolled back in database
pg_stat_get_db_blocks_fetched(oid)	bigint	Number of disk block fetch requests for database
pg_stat_get_db_blocks_hit(oid)	bigint	Number of disk block requests found in cache for database
pg_stat_get_numscans(oid)	bigint	Number of sequential scans done when argument is a table, or number of index scans done when argument is an index
pg_stat_get_tuples_returned(oid)	bigint	Number of tuples read by sequential scans when argument is a table, or number of index tuples read when argument is an index
pg_stat_get_tuples_fetched(oid)	bigint	Number of valid (unexpired) table tuples fetched by sequential scans when argument is a table, or fetched by index scans using this index when argument is an index
pg_stat_get_tuples_inserted(oid)	bigint	Number of tuples inserted into table
pg_stat_get_tuples_updated(oid)	bigint	Number of tuples updated in table
pg_stat_get_tuples_deleted(oid)	bigint	Number of tuples deleted from table
pg_stat_get_blocks_fetched(oid)	bigint	Number of disk block fetch requests for table or index
pg_stat_get_blocks_hit(oid)	bigint	Number of disk block requests found in cache for table or index
pg_stat_get_backend_idset()	set of integer	Set of currently active backend IDs (from 1 to N where N is the number of active backends). See usage example below.
pg_backend_pid()	integer	Process ID of the attached backend
pg_stat_get_backend_pid(integer)	integer	Process ID of all backend processes

Function	Return Type	Description
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_dbid(integer)</code>	integer	Database ID of backend process
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_userid(integer)</code>	integer	User ID of backend process
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_activity(integer)</code>	text	Current query of backend process (NULL if caller is not superuser)
<code>pg_stat_reset()</code>	boolean	Reset all currently collected statistics.

**Note:** `Blocks_fetched` minus `blocks_hit` gives the number of kernel `read()` calls issued for the table, index, or database; but the actual number of physical reads is usually lower due to kernel-level buffering.

The function `pg_stat_get_backend_idset` provides a convenient way to generate one row for each active backend. For example, to show the PIDs and current queries of all backends:

```
SELECT pg_stat_get_backend_pid(S.backendid) AS procpid,
       pg_stat_get_backend_activity(S.backendid) AS current_query
FROM (SELECT pg_stat_get_backend_idset() AS backendid) AS S;
```

### 10.3. Viewing Locks

Another useful tool for monitoring database activity is the `pg_locks` system catalog. This allows the database administrator to view information about the outstanding locks in the lock manager. For example, this capability can be used to:

- View all the locks currently outstanding, all the locks on relations in a particular database, all the locks on a particular relation, or all the locks held by a particular PostgreSQL session.
- View the relation in the current database with the most ungranted locks (which might be a source of contention among database clients).
- Determine the effect of lock contention on overall database performance, as well as the extent to which contention varies with overall database traffic.

For more information on locking and managing concurrency with PostgreSQL, refer to the *PostgreSQL User's Guide*.

**Note:** When the `pg_locks` view is accessed, the internal lock manager data structures are momentarily locked, and a copy is made for the view to display. This ensures that the view produces a consistent set of results, while not blocking normal lock manager operations longer than necessary. Nonetheless there could be some impact on database performance if this view is examined often.

Table 10-3 shows the definition of the `pg_locks` columns. The `pg_locks` view contains one row per lockable object and requested lock mode. Thus, the same lockable object may appear many times, if multiple transactions are holding or waiting for locks on it. A lockable object is either a relation or a transaction ID. (Note that this view includes only table-level locks, not row-level ones. If a transaction is waiting for a row-level lock, it will appear in the view as waiting for the transaction ID of the current holder of that row lock.)

**Table 10-3. Lock Status System View**

Column Name	Type	Description
relation	oid	The OID of the locked relation, or null if the lockable object is a transaction ID. This column can be joined with the <code>pg_class</code> system catalog to get more information on the locked relation. Note however that this will only work for relations in the current database (those for which the <code>database</code> column is either the current database's OID or zero).
database	oid	The OID of the database in which the locked relation exists, or null if the lockable object is a transaction ID. If the lock is on a globally-shared table, this field will be zero. This column can be joined with the <code>pg_database</code> system catalog to get more information on the locked object's database.
transaction	xid	The ID of a transaction, or null if the lockable object is a relation. Every transaction holds an exclusive lock on its transaction ID for its entire duration. If one transaction finds it necessary to wait specifically for another transaction, it does so by attempting to acquire share lock on the other transaction ID. That will succeed only when the other transaction terminates and releases its locks.

Column Name	Type	Description
pid	integer	The process ID of the PostgreSQL backend belonging to the session that has acquired or is attempting to acquire the lock. If you have enabled the statistics collector, this column can be joined with the <code>pg_stat_activity</code> view to get more information on the backend holding or waiting to hold the lock.
mode	text	The mode of the requested or held lock on the lockable object. For more information on the different lock modes available in PostgreSQL, refer to the <i>PostgreSQL User's Guide</i> .
isgranted	boolean	True if this lock has been granted (is held by this session). False indicates that this session is currently waiting to acquire this lock, which implies that some other session is holding a conflicting lock mode on the same lockable object. This backend will sleep until the other lock is released (or a deadlock situation is detected). A single backend can be waiting to acquire at most one lock at a time.

# Chapter 11. Monitoring Disk Usage

This chapter discusses how to monitor the disk usage of a PostgreSQL database system. In the current release, the database administrator does not have much control over the on-disk storage layout, so this chapter is mostly informative and can give you some ideas how to manage the disk usage with operating system tools.

## 11.1. Determining Disk Usage

Each table has a primary heap disk file where most of the data is stored. To store long column values, there is also a TOAST file associated with the table, named based on the table's OID (actually `pg_class.relfilenode`), and an index on the TOAST table. There also may be indexes associated with the base table.

You can monitor disk space from three places: from `psql` using `VACUUM` information, from `psql` using `contrib/dbsize`, and from the command line using `contrib/oid2name`. Using `psql` on a recently vacuumed (or analyzed) database, you can issue queries to see the disk usage of any table:

```
play=# SELECT relfilenode, relpages
play=# FROM pg_class
play=# WHERE relname = 'customer';
 relfilenode | relpages
-----+-----
          16806 |          60
(1 row)
```

Each page is typically 8 kilobytes. (Remember, `relpages` is only updated by `VACUUM` and `ANALYZE`.) To show the space used by TOAST tables, use a query based on the heap `relfilenode` shown above:

```
play=# SELECT relname, relpages
play=# FROM pg_class
play=# WHERE relname = 'pg_toast_16806' OR
play=#         relname = 'pg_toast_16806_index'
play=# ORDER BY relname;
 relname          | relpages
-----+-----
pg_toast_16806    |          0
pg_toast_16806_index |          1
```

You can easily display index usage too:

```
play=# SELECT c2.relname, c2.relpages
play=# FROM pg_class c, pg_class c2, pg_index i
play=# WHERE c.relname = 'customer' AND
play=#         c.oid = i.indrelid AND
play=#         c2.oid = i.indexrelid
play=# ORDER BY c2.relname;
 relname          | relpages
```

```
-----+-----
customer_id_index |      26
```

It is easy to find your largest files using `psql`:

```
play=# SELECT relname, relpages
play=# FROM pg_class
play=# ORDER BY relpages DESC;
      relname      | relpages
-----+-----
bigtable          |      3290
customer          |      3144
```

`contrib/dbsize` loads functions into your database that allow you to find the size of a table or database from inside `psql` without the need for `VACUUM/ANALYZE`.

You can also use `contrib/oid2name` to show disk usage. See `README.oid2name` for examples. It includes a script that shows disk usage for each database.

## 11.2. Disk Full Failure

The most important disk monitoring task of a database administrator is to make sure the disk doesn't grow full. A filled data disk may result in subsequent corruption of database indexes, but not of the fundamental data tables. If the WAL files are on the same disk (as is the case for a default configuration) then a filled disk during database initialization may result in corrupted or incomplete WAL files. This failure condition is detected and the database server will refuse to start up.

If you cannot free up additional space on the disk by deleting other things you can move some of the database files to other file systems and create a symlink from the original location. But note that `pg_dump` cannot save the location layout information of such a setup; a restore would put everything back in one place. To avoid running out of disk space, you can place the WAL files or individual databases in other locations while creating them. See the `initdb` documentation and Section 5.5 for more information.

**Tip:** Some file systems perform badly when they are almost full, so do not wait until the disk is full to take action.

# Chapter 12. Write-Ahead Logging (WAL)

**Author:** Vadim Mikheev and Oliver Elphick

## 12.1. General Description

*Write Ahead Logging* (WAL) is a standard approach to transaction logging. Its detailed description may be found in most (if not all) books about transaction processing. Briefly, WAL's central concept is that changes to data files (where tables and indexes reside) must be written only after those changes have been logged - that is, when log records have been flushed to permanent storage. When we follow this procedure, we do not need to flush data pages to disk on every transaction commit, because we know that in the event of a crash we will be able to recover the database using the log: any changes that have not been applied to the data pages will first be redone from the log records (this is roll-forward recovery, also known as REDO) and then changes made by uncommitted transactions will be removed from the data pages (roll-backward recovery - UNDO).

### 12.1.1. Immediate Benefits of WAL

The first obvious benefit of using WAL is a significantly reduced number of disk writes, since only the log file needs to be flushed to disk at the time of transaction commit; in multiuser environments, commits of many transactions may be accomplished with a single `fsync()` of the log file. Furthermore, the log file is written sequentially, and so the cost of syncing the log is much less than the cost of flushing the data pages.

The next benefit is consistency of the data pages. The truth is that, before WAL, PostgreSQL was never able to guarantee consistency in the case of a crash. Before WAL, any crash during writing could result in:

1. index tuples pointing to nonexistent table rows
2. index tuples lost in split operations
3. totally corrupted table or index page content, because of partially written data pages

Problems with indexes (problems 1 and 2) could possibly have been fixed by additional `fsync()` calls, but it is not obvious how to handle the last case without WAL; WAL saves the entire data page content in the log if that is required to ensure page consistency for after-crash recovery.

### 12.1.2. Future Benefits

UNDO operation is not implemented. This means that changes made by aborted transactions will still occupy disk space and that we still need a permanent `pg_clog` file to hold the status of transactions, since we are not able to re-use transaction identifiers. Once UNDO is implemented, `pg_clog` will no longer be required to be permanent; it will be possible to remove `pg_clog` at shutdown. (However, the urgency of this concern has decreased greatly with the adoption of a segmented storage method for `pg_clog` --- it is no longer necessary to keep old `pg_clog` entries around forever.)

With UNDO, it will also be possible to implement *savepoints* to allow partial rollback of invalid transaction operations (parser errors caused by mistyping commands, insertion of duplicate primary/unique keys and so on) with the ability to continue or commit valid operations made by the transaction before the error. At present, any error will invalidate the whole transaction and require a transaction abort.

WAL offers the opportunity for a new method for database on-line backup and restore (BAR). To use this method, one would have to make periodic saves of data files to another disk, a tape or another host and also archive the WAL log files. The database file copy and the archived log files could be used to restore just as if one were restoring after a crash. Each time a new database file copy was made the old log files could be removed. Implementing this facility will require the logging of data file and index creation and deletion; it will also require development of a method for copying the data files (operating system copy commands are not suitable).

A difficulty standing in the way of realizing these benefits is that they require saving WAL entries for considerable periods of time (eg, as long as the longest possible transaction if transaction UNDO is wanted). The present WAL format is extremely bulky since it includes many disk page snapshots. This is not a serious concern at present, since the entries only need to be kept for one or two checkpoint intervals; but to achieve these future benefits some sort of compressed WAL format will be needed.

## 12.2. Implementation

WAL is automatically enabled from release 7.1 onwards. No action is required from the administrator with the exception of ensuring that the additional disk-space requirements of the WAL logs are met, and that any necessary tuning is done (see Section 12.3).

WAL logs are stored in the directory `$PGDATA/pg_xlog`, as a set of segment files, each 16 MB in size. Each segment is divided into 8 kB pages. The log record headers are described in `access/xlog.h`; record content is dependent on the type of event that is being logged. Segment files are given ever-increasing numbers as names, starting at 0000000000000000. The numbers do not wrap, at present, but it should take a very long time to exhaust the available stock of numbers.

The WAL buffers and control structure are in shared memory, and are handled by the backends; they are protected by lightweight locks. The demand on shared memory is dependent on the number of buffers. The default size of the WAL buffers is 8 buffers of 8 kB each, or 64 kB total.

It is of advantage if the log is located on another disk than the main database files. This may be achieved by moving the directory, `pg_xlog`, to another location (while the postmaster is shut down, of course) and creating a symbolic link from the original location in `$PGDATA` to the new location.

The aim of WAL, to ensure that the log is written before database records are altered, may be subverted by disk drives that falsely report a successful write to the kernel, when, in fact, they have only cached the data and not yet stored it on the disk. A power failure in such a situation may still lead to irrecoverable data corruption. Administrators should try to ensure that disks holding PostgreSQL's log files do not make such false reports.

### 12.2.1. Database Recovery with WAL

After a checkpoint has been made and the log flushed, the checkpoint's position is saved in the file `pg_control`. Therefore, when recovery is to be done, the backend first reads `pg_control` and then the checkpoint record; then it performs the REDO operation by scanning forward from the log position

indicated in the checkpoint record. Because the entire content of data pages is saved in the log on the first page modification after a checkpoint, all pages changed since the checkpoint will be restored to a consistent state.

Using `pg_control` to get the checkpoint position speeds up the recovery process, but to handle possible corruption of `pg_control`, we should actually implement the reading of existing log segments in reverse order -- newest to oldest -- in order to find the last checkpoint. This has not been implemented, yet.

## 12.3. WAL Configuration

There are several WAL-related parameters that affect database performance. This section explains their use. Consult Section 3.4 for details about setting configuration parameters.

*Checkpoints* are points in the sequence of transactions at which it is guaranteed that the data files have been updated with all information logged before the checkpoint. At checkpoint time, all dirty data pages are flushed to disk and a special checkpoint record is written to the log file. As result, in the event of a crash, the recoverer knows from what record in the log (known as the redo record) it should start the REDO operation, since any changes made to data files before that record are already on disk. After a checkpoint has been made, any log segments written before the undo records are no longer needed and can be recycled or removed. (When WAL-based BAR is implemented, the log segments would be archived before being recycled or removed.)

The postmaster spawns a special backend process every so often to create the next checkpoint. A checkpoint is created every `CHECKPOINT_SEGMENTS` log segments, or every `CHECKPOINT_TIMEOUT` seconds, whichever comes first. The default settings are 3 segments and 300 seconds respectively. It is also possible to force a checkpoint by using the SQL command `CHECKPOINT`.

Reducing `CHECKPOINT_SEGMENTS` and/or `CHECKPOINT_TIMEOUT` causes checkpoints to be done more often. This allows faster after-crash recovery (since less work will need to be redone). However, one must balance this against the increased cost of flushing dirty data pages more often. In addition, to ensure data page consistency, the first modification of a data page after each checkpoint results in logging the entire page content. Thus a smaller checkpoint interval increases the volume of output to the log, partially negating the goal of using a smaller interval, and in any case causing more disk I/O.

There will be at least one 16MB segment file, and will normally not be more than  $2 * \text{CHECKPOINT\_SEGMENTS} + 1$  files. You can use this to estimate space requirements for WAL. Ordinarily, when old log segment files are no longer needed, they are recycled (renamed to become the next sequential future segments). If, due to a short-term peak of log output rate, there are more than  $2 * \text{CHECKPOINT\_SEGMENTS} + 1$  segment files, the unneeded segment files will be deleted instead of recycled until the system gets back under this limit.

There are two commonly used WAL functions: `LogInsert` and `LogFlush`. `LogInsert` is used to place a new record into the WAL buffers in shared memory. If there is no space for the new record, `LogInsert` will have to write (move to kernel cache) a few filled WAL buffers. This is undesirable because `LogInsert` is used on every database low level modification (for example, tuple insertion) at a time when an exclusive lock is held on affected data pages, so the operation needs to be as fast as possible. What is worse, writing WAL buffers may also force the creation of a new log segment, which takes even more time. Normally, WAL buffers should be written and flushed by a `LogFlush` request, which is made, for the most part, at transaction commit time to ensure that transaction records are flushed to permanent storage. On systems with high log output, `LogFlush` requests may not occur often enough to prevent WAL

buffers being written by `LogInsert`. On such systems one should increase the number of WAL buffers by modifying the `postgresql.conf` `WAL_BUFFERS` parameter. The default number of WAL buffers is 8. Increasing this value will correspondingly increase shared memory usage.

The `COMMIT_DELAY` parameter defines for how many microseconds the backend will sleep after writing a commit record to the log with `LogInsert` but before performing a `LogFlush`. This delay allows other backends to add their commit records to the log so as to have all of them flushed with a single log sync. No sleep will occur if `fsync` is not enabled or if fewer than `COMMIT_SIBLINGS` other backends are not currently in active transactions; this avoids sleeping when it's unlikely that any other backend will commit soon. Note that on most platforms, the resolution of a sleep request is ten milliseconds, so that any nonzero `COMMIT_DELAY` setting between 1 and 10000 microseconds will have the same effect. Good values for these parameters are not yet clear; experimentation is encouraged.

The `WAL_SYNC_METHOD` parameter determines how PostgreSQL will ask the kernel to force WAL updates out to disk. All the options should be the same as far as reliability goes, but it's quite platform-specific which one will be the fastest. Note that this parameter is irrelevant if `FSYNC` has been turned off.

Setting the `WAL_DEBUG` parameter to any nonzero value will result in each `LogInsert` and `LogFlush` WAL call being logged to standard error. At present, it makes no difference what the nonzero value is. This option may be replaced by a more general mechanism in the future.

# Chapter 13. Regression Tests

## 13.1. Introduction

The regression tests are a comprehensive set of tests for the SQL implementation in PostgreSQL. They test standard SQL operations as well as the extended capabilities of PostgreSQL. The test suite was originally developed by Jolly Chen and Andrew Yu, and was extensively revised and repackaged by Marc Fournier and Thomas Lockhart. From PostgreSQL 6.1 onward the regression tests are current for every official release.

## 13.2. Running the Tests

The regression test can be run against an already installed and running server, or using a temporary installation within the build tree. Furthermore, there is a “parallel” and a “sequential” mode for running the tests. The sequential method runs each test script in turn, whereas the parallel method starts up multiple server processes to run groups of tests in parallel. Parallel testing gives confidence that interprocess communication and locking are working correctly. For historical reasons, the sequential test is usually run against an existing installation and the parallel method against a temporary installation, but there are no technical reasons for this.

To run the regression tests after building but before installation, type

```
$ gmake check
```

in the top-level directory. (Or you can change to `src/test/regress` and run the command there.) This will first build several auxiliary files, such as platform-dependent “expected” files and some sample user-defined trigger functions, and then run the test driver script. At the end you should see something like

```
=====
All 77 tests passed.
=====
```

or otherwise a note about what tests failed. See Section 13.3 below for more.

**Note:** Because this test method runs a temporary server, it will not work when you are the root user (the server will not start as root). If you already did the build as root, you do not have to start all over. Instead, make the regression test directory writable by some other user, log in as that user, and restart the tests. For example,

```
root# chmod -R a+w src/test/regress
root# chmod -R a+w contrib/spi
root# su - joeuser
joeuser$ cd top-level build directory
joeuser$ gmake check
```

(The only possible “security risk” here is that other users might be able to alter the regression test results behind your back. Use common sense when managing user permissions.)

Alternatively, run the tests after installation.

**Tip:** The parallel regression test starts quite a few processes under your user ID. Presently, the maximum concurrency is twenty parallel test scripts, which means sixty processes --- there's a backend, a psql, and usually a shell parent process for the psql for each test script. So if your system enforces a per-user limit on the number of processes, make sure this limit is at least seventy-five or so, else you may get random-seeming failures in the parallel test. If you are not in a position to raise the limit, you can edit the file `src/test/regress/parallel_schedule` to split the larger concurrent test sets into more manageable groups.

**Tip:** On some systems, the default Bourne-compatible shell (`/bin/sh`) gets confused when it has to manage too many child processes in parallel. This may cause the parallel test run to lock up or fail. In such cases, specify a different Bourne-compatible shell on the command line, for example:

```
$ gmake SHELL=/bin/ksh check
```

If no non-broken shell is available, you can alter the parallel test schedule as suggested above.

To run the tests after installation (see Chapter 1), initialize a data area and start the server, as explained in Chapter 3, then type

```
$ gmake installcheck
```

The tests will expect to contact the server at the local host and the default port number, unless directed otherwise by `PGHOST` and `PGPORT` environment variables.

## 13.3. Test Evaluation

Some properly installed and fully functional PostgreSQL installations can “fail” some of these regression tests due to platform-specific artifacts such as varying floating-point representation and time zone support. The tests are currently evaluated using a simple diff comparison against the outputs generated on a reference system, so the results are sensitive to small system differences. When a test is reported as “failed”, always examine the differences between expected and actual results; you may well find that the differences are not significant. Nonetheless, we still strive to maintain accurate reference files across all supported platforms, so it can be expected that all tests pass.

The actual outputs of the regression tests are in files in the `src/test/regress/results` directory. The test script uses diff to compare each output file against the reference outputs stored in the `src/test/regress/expected` directory. Any differences are saved for your inspection in `src/test/regress/regression.diffs`. (Or you can run diff yourself, if you prefer.)

### 13.3.1. Error message differences

Some of the regression tests involve intentional invalid input values. Error messages can come from either the PostgreSQL code or from the host platform system routines. In the latter case, the messages may vary

between platforms, but should reflect similar information. These differences in messages will result in a “failed” regression test that can be validated by inspection.

### 13.3.2. Locale differences

If you run the tests against an already-installed server that was initialized with a collation order locale different than C then there may be differences due to sort order and follow-up failures. The regression test suite is set up to handle this problem by providing alternative result files that together are known to handle a large number of locales. For example, for the “char” test, the expected file `char.out` handles the C and POSIX locales, and the file `char_1.out` handles many other locales. The regression test driver will automatically pick the best file to match against when checking for success and for computing failure differences. (This means that the regression tests cannot detect whether the results are appropriate for the configured locale. The tests will simply pick the one result file that works best.)

If for some reason the existing expected files do not cover some locale, you can add a new file. The naming scheme is `testname_digit.out`. The actual digit is not significant. Remember that the regression test driver will consider all such files to be equally valid test results. If the test results are platform-dependent, the technique described in Section 13.4 should be used instead.

### 13.3.3. Date and time differences

Some of the queries in the `horology` test will fail if you run the test on the day of a daylight-saving time changeover, or the day before or after one. These queries assume that the intervals between midnight yesterday, midnight today and midnight tomorrow are exactly twenty-four hours -- which is wrong if daylight-saving time went into or out of effect meanwhile.

Most of the date and time results are dependent on the time zone environment. The reference files are generated for time zone `PST8PDT` (Berkeley, California) and there will be apparent failures if the tests are not run with that time zone setting. The regression test driver sets environment variable `PGTZ` to `PST8PDT`, which normally ensures proper results. However, your system must provide library support for the `PST8PDT` time zone, or the time zone-dependent tests will fail. To verify that your machine does have this support, type the following:

```
$ env TZ=PST8PDT date
```

The command above should have returned the current system time in the `PST8PDT` time zone. If the `PST8PDT` database is not available, then your system may have returned the time in GMT. If the `PST8PDT` time zone is not available, you can set the time zone rules explicitly:

```
PGTZ='PST8PDT7,M04.01.0,M10.05.03'; export PGTZ
```

There appear to be some systems that do not accept the recommended syntax for explicitly setting the local time zone rules; you may need to use a different `PGTZ` setting on such machines.

Some systems using older time zone libraries fail to apply daylight-saving corrections to dates before 1970, causing pre-1970 PDT times to be displayed in PST instead. This will result in localized differences in the test results.

### 13.3.4. Floating-point differences

Some of the tests involve computing 64-bit (`double precision`) numbers from table columns. Differences in results involving mathematical functions of `double precision` columns have been observed. The `float8` and geometry tests are particularly prone to small differences across platforms, or even with different compiler optimization options. Human eyeball comparison is needed to determine the real significance of these differences which are usually 10 places to the right of the decimal point.

Some systems signal errors from `pow()` and `exp()` differently from the mechanism expected by the current PostgreSQL code.

### 13.3.5. Polygon differences

Several of the tests involve operations on geographic data about the Oakland/Berkeley, California street map. The map data is expressed as polygons whose vertices are represented as pairs of `double precision` numbers (decimal latitude and longitude). Initially, some tables are created and loaded with geographic data, then some views are created that join two tables using the polygon intersection operator (`##`), then a `select` is done on the view.

When comparing the results from different platforms, differences occur in the 2nd or 3rd place to the right of the decimal point. The SQL statements where these problems occur are the following:

```
SELECT * from street;
SELECT * from iexit;
```

### 13.3.6. Row ordering differences

You might see differences in which the same rows are output in a different order than what appears in the expected file. In most cases this is not, strictly speaking, a bug. Most of the regression test scripts are not so pedantic as to use an `ORDER BY` for every single `SELECT`, and so their result row orderings are not well-defined according to the letter of the SQL specification. In practice, since we are looking at the same queries being executed on the same data by the same software, we usually get the same result ordering on all platforms, and so the lack of `ORDER BY` isn't a problem. Some queries do exhibit cross-platform ordering differences, however. (Ordering differences can also be triggered by non-C locale settings.)

Therefore, if you see an ordering difference, it's not something to worry about, unless the query does have an `ORDER BY` that your result is violating. But please report it anyway, so that we can add an `ORDER BY` to that particular query and thereby eliminate the bogus "failure" in future releases.

You might wonder why we don't order all the regress test queries explicitly to get rid of this issue once and for all. The reason is that that would make the regression tests less useful, not more, since they'd tend to exercise query plan types that produce ordered results to the exclusion of those that don't.

### 13.3.7. The “random” test

There is at least one case in the “random” test script that is intended to produce random results. This causes random to fail the regression test once in a while (perhaps once in every five to ten trials). Typing

```
diff results/random.out expected/random.out
```

should produce only one or a few lines of differences. You need not worry unless the random test always fails in repeated attempts. (On the other hand, if the random test is *never* reported to fail even in many trials of the regression tests, you probably *should* worry.)

## 13.4. Platform-specific comparison files

Since some of the tests inherently produce platform-specific results, we have provided a way to supply platform-specific result comparison files. Frequently, the same variation applies to multiple platforms; rather than supplying a separate comparison file for every platform, there is a mapping file that defines which comparison file to use. So, to eliminate bogus test “failures” for a particular platform, you must choose or make a variant result file, and then add a line to the mapping file, which is `resultmap`.

Each line in the mapping file is of the form

```
testname/platformpattern=comparisonfilename
```

The test name is just the name of the particular regression test module. The platform pattern is a pattern in the style of `expr` (that is, a regular expression with an implicit `^` anchor at the start). It is matched against the platform name as printed by `config.guess` followed by `:gcc` or `:cc`, depending on whether you use the GNU compiler or the system’s native compiler (on systems where there is a difference). The comparison file name is the name of the substitute result comparison file.

For example: some systems using older time zone libraries fail to apply daylight-saving corrections to dates before 1970, causing pre-1970 PDT times to be displayed in PST instead. This causes a few differences in the `horology` regression test. Therefore, we provide a variant comparison file, `horology-no-DST-before-1970.out`, which includes the results to be expected on these systems. To silence the bogus “failure” message on HPPA platforms, `resultmap` includes

```
horology/hppa=horology-no-DST-before-1970
```

which will trigger on any machine for which the output of `config.guess` begins with “hppa”. Other lines in `resultmap` select the variant comparison file for other platforms where it’s appropriate.

# Appendix A. Release Notes

## A.1. Release 7.3.2

**Release date:** 2003-02-04

This has a variety of fixes from 7.3.1.

### A.1.1. Migration to version 7.3.2

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 7.3.\*.

### A.1.2. Changes

- Restore creation of OID column in CREATE TABLE AS / SELECT INTO
- Fix pg\_dump core dump when dumping views having comments
- Dump DEFERRABLE/INITIALLY DEFERRED constraints properly
- Fix UPDATE when child table's column numbering differs from parent
- Increase default value of max\_fsm\_relations
- Fix problem when fetching backwards in a cursor for a single-row query
- Make backward fetch work properly with cursor on SELECT DISTINCT query
- Fix problems with loading pg\_dump files containing contrib/lo usage
- Fix problem with all-numeric user names
- Fix possible memory leak and core dump during disconnect in libpq
- Make plpython's spi\_execute command handle nulls properly (Andrew Bosma)
- Adjust plpython error reporting so that its regression test passes again
- Work with bison 1.875
- Handle mixed-case names properly in plpgsql's %type (Neil)
- Fix core dump in pltcl when executing a query rewritten by a rule
- Repair array subscript overruns (per report from Yichen Xie)
- Reduce MAX\_TIME\_PRECISION from 13 to 10 in floating-point case
- Correctly case-fold variable names in per-database and per-user settings
- Fix coredump in plpgsql's RETURN NEXT when SELECT into record returns no rows
- Fix outdated use of pg\_type.typprtlen in python client interface
- Correctly handle fractional seconds in timestamps in JDBC driver
- Improve performance of getImportedKeys() in JDBC
- Make shared-library symlinks work standardly on HP-UX (Giles)
- Repair inconsistent rounding behavior for timestamp, time, interval
- SSL negotiation fixes (Nathan Mueller)
- Make libpq's ~/.pgpass feature work when connecting with PQconnectDB
- Update my2pg, ora2pg
- Translation updates
- Add casts between types lo and oid in contrib/lo

fastpath code now checks for privilege to call function

## A.2. Release 7.3.1

**Release date:** 2002-12-18

This has a variety of fixes from 7.3.

### A.2.1. Migration to version 7.3.1

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 7.3. However, it should be noted that the main PostgreSQL interface library, libpq, has a new major version number for this release, which will require that client code using libpq be relinked.

### A.2.2. Changes

Fix a core dump of COPY TO when client/server encodings don't match  
(Tom)

Allow pg\_dump to work with pre-7.2 servers (Philip)  
contrib/adddepend fixes (Tom)

Fix problem with deletion of per-user/per-database config settings  
(Tom)

contrib/vacuumlo fix (Tom)

Allow 'password' encryption even when pg\_shadow contains MD5 passwords  
(Bruce)

contrib/dbmirror fix (Steven Singer)

Optimizer fixes (Tom)

contrib/tsearch fixes (Teodor Sigaev, Magnus)

Fix encoding name resolution to work in Turkish locale (Nicolai Tufar)

Increment libpq library's major version number (Bruce)

pg\_hba.conf error reporting fixes (Bruce, Neil)

Add SCO OpenServer 5.0.4 as a supported platform (Bruce)

Prevent EXPLAIN from crashing server (Tom)

SSL fixes (Nathan Mueller)

Prevent composite column creation via ALTER TABLE (Tom)

Fix conversion between LATIN9 and UNICODE (Peter)

Translation updates

## A.3. Release 7.3

**Release date:** 2002-11-27

### A.3.1. Overview

Major changes in this release:

#### Schemas

Schemas allow users to create objects in separate namespaces, so two people or applications can have tables with the same name. There is also a public schema for shared tables. Table/index creation can be restricted by removing permissions on the public schema.

#### Drop Column

PostgreSQL now supports the `ALTER TABLE . . . DROP COLUMN` functionality.

#### Table Functions

Functions returning multiple rows and/or multiple columns are now much easier to use than before. You can call such a “table function” in the `SELECT FROM` clause, treating its output like a table. Also, PL/pgSQL functions can now return sets.

#### Prepared Queries

PostgreSQL now supports prepared queries, for improved performance.

#### Dependency Tracking

PostgreSQL now records object dependencies, which allows improvements in many areas. `DROP` statements now take either `CASCADE` or `RESTRICT` to control whether dependent objects are also dropped.

#### Privileges

Functions and procedural languages now have privileges, and functions can be defined to run with the privileges of their creator.

#### Internationalization

Both multibyte and locale support are now always enabled.

#### Logging

A variety of logging options have been enhanced.

#### Interfaces

A large number of interfaces have been moved to <http://gborg.postgresql.org> where they can be developed and released independently.

#### Functions/Identifiers

By default, functions can now take up to 32 parameters, and identifiers can be up to 63 bytes long. Also, `OPAQUE` is now deprecated: there are specific “pseudo-datatypes” to represent each of the former meanings of `OPAQUE` in function argument and result types.

### A.3.2. Migration to version 7.3

A dump/restore using `pg_dump` is required for those wishing to migrate data from any previous release. If your application examines the system catalogs, additional changes will be required due to the introduction of schemas in 7.3; for more information, see: [http://www.ca.postgresql.org/docs/momjian/upgrade\\_tips\\_7.3<sup>2</sup>](http://www.ca.postgresql.org/docs/momjian/upgrade_tips_7.3<sup>2</sup>).

Observe the following incompatibilities:

- Pre-6.3 clients are no longer supported.
- `pg_hba.conf` now has a column for the user name and additional features. Existing files need to be adjusted.
- Several `postgresql.conf` logging parameters have been renamed.
- `LIMIT #, #` has been disabled; use `LIMIT # OFFSET #`.
- `INSERT` statements with column lists must specify a value for each specified column. For example, `INSERT INTO tab (col1, col2) VALUES ('val1')` is now invalid. It's still allowed to supply fewer columns than expected if the `INSERT` does not have a column list.
- `serial` columns are no longer automatically `UNIQUE`; thus, an index will not automatically be created.
- A `SET` command inside an aborted transaction is now rolled back.
- `COPY` no longer considers missing trailing columns to be null. All columns need to be specified. (However, one may achieve a similar effect by specifying a column list in the `COPY` command.)
- The data type `timestamp` is now equivalent to `timestamp without time zone`, instead of `timestamp with time zone`.
- Pre-7.3 databases loaded into 7.3 will not have the new object dependencies for `serial` columns, unique constraints, and foreign keys. See the directory `contrib/adddepend/` for a detailed description and a script that will add such dependencies.
- An empty string (`"`) is no longer allowed as the input into an integer field. Formerly, it was silently interpreted as 0.

### A.3.3. Changes

#### A.3.3.1. Server Operation

Add `pg_locks` view to show locks (Neil)

Security fixes for password negotiation memory allocation (Neil)

Remove support for version 0 FE/BE protocol (PostgreSQL 6.2 and

2. [http://www.ca.postgresql.org/docs/momjian/upgrade\\_tips\\_7.3](http://www.ca.postgresql.org/docs/momjian/upgrade_tips_7.3)

earlier) (Tom)  
Reserve the last few backend slots for superusers, add parameter  
superuser\_reserved\_connections to control this (Nigel J. Andrews)

### **A.3.3.2. Performance**

Improve startup by calling localtime() only once (Tom)  
Cache system catalog information in flat files for faster startup  
(Tom)  
Improve caching of index information (Tom)  
Optimizer improvements (Tom, Fernando Nasser)  
Catalog caches now store failed lookups (Tom)  
Hash function improvements (Neil)  
Improve performance of query tokenization and network handling (Peter)  
Speed improvement for large object restore (Mario Weilguni)  
Mark expired index entries on first lookup, saving later heap fetches  
(Tom)  
Avoid excessive NULL bitmap padding (Manfred Koizar)  
Add BSD-licensed qsort() for Solaris, for performance (Bruce)  
Reduce per-row overhead by four bytes (Manfred Koizar)  
Fix GEQO optimizer bug (Neil Conway)  
Make WITHOUT OID actually save four bytes per row (Manfred Koizar)  
Add default\_statistics\_target variable to specify ANALYZE buckets  
(Neil)  
Use local buffer cache for temporary tables so no WAL overhead (Tom)  
Improve free space map performance on large tables (Stephen Marshall,  
Tom)  
Improved WAL write concurrency (Tom)

### **A.3.3.3. Privileges**

Add privileges on functions and procedural languages (Peter)  
Add OWNER to CREATE DATABASE so superusers can create databases  
on behalf of unprivileged users. (Gavin Sherry, Tom)  
Add new object permission bits EXECUTE and USAGE (Tom)  
Add SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION DEFAULT and RESET SESSION AUTHORIZATION  
(Tom)  
Allow functions to be executed with the privilege of the function  
owner (Peter)

#### A.3.3.4. Server Configuration

Server log messages now tagged with LOG, not DEBUG (Bruce)  
Add user column to pg\_hba.conf (Bruce)  
Have log\_connections output two lines in log file (Tom)  
Remove debug\_level from postgresql.conf, now server\_min\_messages (Bruce)  
New ALTER DATABASE/USER ... SET command for per-user/database initialization (Peter)  
New parameters server\_min\_messages and client\_min\_messages to control which messages are sent to the server logs or client applications (Bruce)  
Allow pg\_hba.conf to specify lists of users/databases separated by commas, group names prepended with +, and file names prepended with @ (Bruce)  
Remove secondary password file capability and pg\_password utility (Bruce)  
Add variable db\_user\_namespace for database-local user names (Bruce)  
SSL improvements (Bear Giles)  
Make encryption of stored passwords the default (Bruce)  
Allow pg\_statistics to be reset by calling pg\_stat\_reset() (Christopher)  
Add log\_duration parameter (Bruce)  
Rename debug\_print\_query to log\_statement (Bruce)  
Rename show\_query\_stats to show\_statement\_stats (Bruce)  
Add param log\_min\_error\_statement to print commands to logs on error (Gavin)

#### A.3.3.5. Queries

Make cursors insensitive, meaning their contents do not change (Tom)  
Disable LIMIT #,# syntax; now only LIMIT # OFFSET # supported (Bruce)  
Increase identifier length to 63 (Neil, Bruce)  
UNION fixes for merging  $\geq 3$  columns of different lengths (Tom)  
Add DEFAULT keyword to INSERT, e.g., INSERT ... (... , DEFAULT, ...) (Rod)  
Allow views to have default values using ALTER COLUMN ... SET DEFAULT (Neil)  
Fail on INSERTs with column lists that don't supply all column values, e.g., INSERT INTO tab (col1, col2) VALUES ('val1'); (Rod)  
Fix for join aliases (Tom)  
Fix for FULL OUTER JOINs (Tom)  
Improve reporting of invalid identifier and location (Tom, Gavin)  
Fix OPEN cursor(args) (Tom)  
Allow 'ctid' to be used in a view and currtid(viewname) (Hiroshi)  
Fix for CREATE TABLE AS with UNION (Tom)  
SQL99 syntax improvements (Thomas)

Add statement\_timeout variable to cancel queries (Bruce)  
Allow prepared queries with PREPARE/EXECUTE (Neil)  
Allow FOR UPDATE to appear after LIMIT/OFFSET (Bruce)  
Add variable autocommit (Tom, David Van Wie)

### **A.3.3.6. Object Manipulation**

Make equals signs optional in CREATE DATABASE (Gavin Sherry)  
Make ALTER TABLE OWNER change index ownership too (Neil)  
New ALTER TABLE tablename ALTER COLUMN colname SET STORAGE controls  
TOAST storage, compression (John Gray)  
Add schema support, CREATE/DROP SCHEMA (Tom)  
Create schema for temporary tables (Tom)  
Add variable search\_path for schema search (Tom)  
Add ALTER TABLE SET/DROP NOT NULL (Christopher)  
New CREATE FUNCTION volatility levels (Tom)  
Make rule names unique only per table (Tom)  
Add 'ON tablename' clause to DROP RULE and COMMENT ON RULE (Tom)  
Add ALTER TRIGGER RENAME (Joe)  
New current\_schema() and current\_schemas() inquiry functions (Tom)  
Allow functions to return multiple rows (table functions) (Joe)  
Make WITH optional in CREATE DATABASE, for consistency (Bruce)  
Add object dependency tracking (Rod, Tom)  
Add RESTRICT/CASCADE to DROP commands (Rod)  
Add ALTER TABLE DROP for non-CHECK CONSTRAINT (Rod)  
Autodestroy sequence on DROP of table with SERIAL (Rod)  
Prevent column dropping if column is used by foreign key (Rod)  
Automatically drop constraints/functions when object is dropped (Rod)  
Add CREATE/DROP OPERATOR CLASS (Bill Studenmund, Tom)  
Add ALTER TABLE DROP COLUMN (Christopher, Tom, Hiroshi)  
Prevent inherited columns from being removed or renamed (Alvaro  
Herrera)  
Fix foreign key constraints to not error on intermediate database  
states (Stephan)  
Propagate column or table renaming to foreign key constraints  
Add CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW (Gavin, Neil, Tom)  
Add CREATE OR REPLACE RULE (Gavin, Neil, Tom)  
Have rules execute alphabetically, returning more predictable values  
(Tom)  
Triggers are now fired in alphabetical order (Tom)  
Add /contrib/adddepend to handle pre-7.3 object dependencies (Rod)  
Allow better casting when inserting/updating values (Tom)

**A.3.3.7. Utility Commands**

Have COPY TO output embedded carriage returns and newlines as \r and \n (Tom)

Allow DELIMITER in COPY FROM to be 8-bit clean (Tatsuo)

Make pg\_dump use ALTER TABLE ADD PRIMARY KEY, for performance (Neil)

Disable brackets in multistatement rules (Bruce)

Disable VACUUM from being called inside a function (Bruce)

Allow dropdb and other scripts to use identifiers with spaces (Bruce)

Restrict database comment changes to the current database

Allow comments on operators, independent of the underlying function (Rod)

Rollback SET commands in aborted transactions (Tom)

EXPLAIN now outputs as a query (Tom)

Display condition expressions and sort keys in EXPLAIN (Tom)

Add 'SET LOCAL var = value' to set configuration variables for a single transaction (Tom)

Allow ANALYZE to run in a transaction (Bruce)

Improve COPY syntax using new WITH clauses, keep backward compatibility (Bruce)

Fix pg\_dump to consistently output tags in non-ASCII dumps (Bruce)

Make foreign key constraints clearer in dump file (Rod)

Add COMMENT ON CONSTRAINT (Rod)

Allow COPY TO/FROM to specify column names (Brent Verner)

Dump UNIQUE and PRIMARY KEY constraints as ALTER TABLE (Rod)

Have SHOW output a query result (Joe)

Generate failure on short COPY lines rather than pad NULLs (Neil)

Fix CLUSTER to preserve all table attributes (Alvaro Herrera)

New pg\_settings table to view/modify GUC settings (Joe)

Add smart quoting, portability improvements to pg\_dump output (Peter)

Dump serial columns out as SERIAL (Tom)

Enable large file support, >2G for pg\_dump (Peter, Philip Warner, Bruce)

Disallow TRUNCATE on tables that are involved in referential constraints (Rod)

Have TRUNCATE also auto-truncate the toast table of the relation (Tom)

Add clusterdb utility that will auto-cluster an entire database based on previous CLUSTER operations (Alvaro Herrera)

Overhaul pg\_dumpall (Peter)

Allow REINDEX of TOAST tables (Tom)

Implemented START TRANSACTION, per SQL99 (Neil)

Fix rare index corruption when a page split affects bulk delete (Tom)

Fix ALTER TABLE ... ADD COLUMN for inheritance (Alvaro Herrera)

**A.3.3.8. Data Types and Functions**

Fix factorial(0) to return 1 (Bruce)

Date/time/timezone improvements (Thomas)

Fix for array slice extraction (Tom)

Fix extract/date\_part to report proper microseconds for timestamp (Tatsuo)

Allow text\_substr() and bytea\_substr() to read TOAST values more efficiently (John Gray)

Add domain support (Rod)

Make WITHOUT TIME ZONE the default for TIMESTAMP and TIME data types (Thomas)

Allow alternate storage scheme of 64-bit integers for date/time types using --enable-integer-datetime in configure (Thomas)

Make timezone(timestampz) return timestamp rather than a string (Thomas)

Allow fractional seconds in date/time types for dates prior to 1BC (Thomas)

Limit timestamp data types to 6 decimal places of precision (Thomas)

Change timezone conversion functions from timetz() to timezone() (Thomas)

Add configuration variables datestyle and timezone (Tom)

Add OVERLAY(), which allows substitution of a substring in a string (Thomas)

Add SIMILAR TO (Thomas, Tom)

Add regular expression SUBSTRING(string FROM pat FOR escape) (Thomas)

Add LOCALTIME and LOCALTIMESTAMP functions (Thomas)

Add named composite types using CREATE TYPE typename AS (column) (Joe)

Allow composite type definition in the table alias clause (Joe)

Add new API to simplify creation of C language table functions (Joe)

Remove ODBC-compatible empty parentheses from calls to SQL99 functions for which these parentheses do not match the standard (Thomas)

Allow macaddr data type to accept 12 hex digits with no separators (Mike Wyr)

Add CREATE/DROP CAST (Peter)

Add IS DISTINCT FROM operator (Thomas)

Add SQL99 TREAT() function, synonym for CAST() (Thomas)

Add pg\_backend\_pid() to output backend pid (Bruce)

Add IS OF / IS NOT OF type predicate (Thomas)

Allow bit string constants without fully-specified length (Thomas)

Allow conversion between 8-byte integers and bit strings (Thomas)

Implement hex literal conversion to bit string literal (Thomas)

Allow table functions to appear in the FROM clause (Joe)

Increase maximum number of function parameters to 32 (Bruce)

No longer automatically create index for SERIAL column (Tom)

Add current\_database() (Rod)

Fix cash\_words() to not overflow buffer (Tom)  
Add functions replace(), split\_part(), to\_hex() (Joe)  
Fix LIKE for bytea as a right-hand argument (Joe)  
Prevent crashes caused by SELECT cash\_out(2) (Tom)  
Fix to\_char(1,'FM999.99') to return a period (Karel)  
Fix trigger/type/language functions returning OPAQUE to return proper type (Tom)

### **A.3.3.9. Internationalization**

Add additional encodings: Korean (JOHAB), Thai (WIN874), Vietnamese (TCVN), Arabic (WIN1256), Simplified Chinese (GBK), Korean (UHC) (Eiji Tokuya)  
Enable locale support by default (Peter)  
Add locale variables (Peter)  
Escape bytes  $\geq 0x7f$  for multibyte in PQescapeBytea/PQunescapeBytea (Tatsuo)  
Add locale awareness to regular expression character classes  
Enable multibyte support by default (Tatsuo)  
Add GB18030 multibyte support (Bill Huang)  
Add CREATE/DROP CONVERSION, allowing loadable encodings (Tatsuo, Kaori)  
Add pg\_conversion table (Tatsuo)  
Add SQL99 CONVERT() function (Tatsuo)  
pg\_dumpall, pg\_controldata, and pg\_resetxlog now national-language aware (Peter)  
New and updated translations

### **A.3.3.10. Server-side Languages**

Allow recursive SQL function (Peter)  
Change PL/Tcl build to use configured compiler and Makefile.shlib (Peter)  
Overhaul the PL/pgSQL FOUND variable to be more Oracle-compatible (Neil, Tom)  
Allow PL/pgSQL to handle quoted identifiers (Tom)  
Allow set-returning PL/pgSQL functions (Neil)  
Make PL/pgSQL schema-aware (Joe)  
Remove some memory leaks (Nigel J. Andrews, Tom)

### **A.3.3.11. Psql**

Don't lowercase psql \connect database name for 7.2.0 compatibility (Tom)  
Add psql \timing to time user queries (Greg Sabino Mullane)  
Have psql \d show index information (Greg Sabino Mullane)  
New psql \dD shows domains (Jonathan Eisler)  
Allow psql to show rules on views (Paul ?)  
Fix for psql variable substitution (Tom)  
Allow psql \d to show temporary table structure (Tom)  
Allow psql \d to show foreign keys (Rod)  
Fix \? to honor \pset pager (Bruce)  
Have psql reports its version number on startup (Tom)  
Allow \copy to specify column names (Tom)

### **A.3.3.12. Libpq**

Add \$HOME/.pgpass to store host/user password combinations (Alvaro Herrera)  
Add PQunescapeBytea() function to libpq (Patrick Welche)  
Fix for sending large queries over non-blocking connections (Bernhard Herzog)  
Fix for libpq using timers on Win9X (David Ford)  
Allow libpq notify to handle servers with different-length identifiers (Tom)  
Add libpq PQescapeString() and PQescapeBytea() to Win32 (Bruce)  
Fix for SSL with non-blocking connections (Jack Bates)  
Add libpq connection timeout parameter (Denis A Ustimenko)

### **A.3.3.13. JDBC**

Allow JDBC to compile with JDK 1.4 (Dave)  
Add JDBC 3 support (Barry)  
Allows JDBC to set loglevel by adding ?loglevel=X to the connection URL (Barry)  
Add Driver.info() message that prints out the version number (Barry)  
Add updateable result sets (Raghu Nidagal, Dave)  
Add support for callable statements (Paul Bethe)  
Add query cancel capability  
Add refresh row (Dave)  
Fix MD5 encryption handling for multibyte servers (Jun Kawai)  
Add support for prepared statements (Barry)

#### A.3.3.14. Miscellaneous Interfaces

Fixed ECPG bug concerning octal numbers in single quotes (Michael)  
Move src/interfaces/libpgeasy to <http://gborg.postgresql.org> (Marc, Bruce)  
Improve Python interface (Elliot Lee, Andrew Johnson, Greg Copeland)  
Add libpgtcl connection close event (Gerhard Hintermayer)  
Move src/interfaces/libpq++ to <http://gborg.postgresql.org> (Marc, Bruce)  
Move src/interfaces/odbc to <http://gborg.postgresql.org> (Marc)  
Move src/interfaces/libpgeasy to <http://gborg.postgresql.org> (Marc, Bruce)  
Move src/interfaces/perl5 to <http://gborg.postgresql.org> (Marc, Bruce)  
Remove src/bin/pgaccess from main tree, now at <http://www.pgaccess.org> (Bruce)  
Add `pg_on_connection_loss` command to libpgtcl (Gerhard Hintermayer, Tom)

#### A.3.3.15. Source Code

Fix for parallel make (Peter)  
AIX fixes for linking Tcl (Andreas Zeugswetter)  
Allow PL/Perl to build under Cygwin (Jason Tishler)  
Improve MIPS compiles (Peter, Oliver Elphick)  
Require Autoconf version 2.53 (Peter)  
Require readline and zlib by default in configure (Peter)  
Allow Solaris to use Intimate Shared Memory (ISM), for performance (Scott Brunza, P.J. Josh Rovero)  
Always enable syslog in compile, remove `--enable-syslog` option (Tatsuo)  
Always enable multibyte in compile, remove `--enable-multibyte` option (Tatsuo)  
Always enable locale in compile, remove `--enable-locale` option (Peter)  
Fix for Win9x DLL creation (Magnus Naeslund)  
Fix for `link()` usage by WAL code on Win32, BeOS (Jason Tishler)  
Add `sys/types.h` to `c.h`, remove from main files (Peter, Bruce)  
Fix AIX hang on SMP machines (Tomoyuki Nijima)  
AIX SMP hang fix (Tomoyuki Nijima)  
Fix pre-1970 date handling on newer glibc libraries (Tom)  
Fix PowerPC SMP locking (Tom)  
Prevent gcc `-ffast-math` from being used (Peter, Tom)  
Bison `>= 1.50` now required for developer builds  
Kerberos 5 support now builds with Heimdal (Peter)  
Add appendix in the User's Guide which lists SQL features (Thomas)  
Improve loadable module linking to use `RTLD_NOW` (Tom)

New error levels WARNING, INFO, LOG, DEBUG[1-5] (Bruce)  
New src/port directory holds replaced libc functions (Peter, Bruce)  
New pg\_namespace system catalog for schemas (Tom)  
Add pg\_class.relnamespace for schemas (Tom)  
Add pg\_type.typnamespace for schemas (Tom)  
Add pg\_proc.pronamespace for schemas (Tom)  
Restructure aggregates to have pg\_proc entries (Tom)  
System relations now have their own namespace, pg\_\* test not required  
(Fernando Nasser)  
Rename TOAST index names to be \*\_index rather than \*\_idx (Neil)  
Add namespaces for operators, opclasses (Tom)  
Add additional checks to server control file (Thomas)  
New Polish FAQ (Marcin Mazurek)  
Add Posix semaphore support (Tom)  
Document need for reindex (Bruce)  
Rename some internal identifiers to simplify Win32 compile (Jan,  
Katherine Ward)  
Add documentation on computing disk space (Bruce)  
Remove KSQO from GUC (Bruce)  
Fix memory leak in rtree (Kenneth Been)  
Modify a few error messages for consistency (Bruce)  
Remove unused system table columns (Peter)  
Make system columns NOT NULL where appropriate (Tom)  
Clean up use of sprintf in favor of snprintf() (Neil, Jukka Holappa)  
Remove OPAQUE and create specific subtypes (Tom)  
Cleanups in array internal handling (Joe, Tom)  
Disallow pg\_atoi("") (Bruce)  
Remove parameter wal\_files because WAL files are now recycled (Bruce)  
Add version numbers to heap pages (Tom)

### **A.3.3.16. Contrib**

Allow inet arrays in /contrib/array (Neil)  
Gist fixes (Teodor Sigaev, Neil)  
Upgrade /contrib/mysql  
Add /contrib/dbsize which shows table sizes without vacuum (Peter)  
Add /contrib/intagg, integer aggregator routines (mlw)  
Improve /contrib/oid2name (Neil, Bruce)  
Improve /contrib/tsearch (Oleg, Teodor Sigaev)  
Cleanups of /contrib/rserver (Alexey V. Borzov)  
Update /contrib/oracle conversion utility (Gilles Darold)  
Update /contrib/dblink (Joe)  
Improve options supported by /contrib/vacuumlo (Mario Weilguni)  
Improvements to /contrib/intarray (Oleg, Teodor Sigaev, Andrey  
Oktyabrski)  
Add /contrib/reindexdb utility (Shaun Thomas)  
Add indexing to /contrib/isbn\_issn (Dan Weston)

Add /contrib/dbmirror (Steven Singer)  
Improve /contrib/pgbench (Neil)  
Add /contrib/tablefunc table function examples (Joe)  
Add /contrib/ltree data type for tree structures (Teodor Sigaev,  
Oleg Bartunov)  
Move /contrib/pg\_controldata, pg\_resetxlog into main tree (Bruce)  
Fixes to /contrib/cube (Bruno Wolff)  
Improve /contrib/fulltextindex (Christopher)

## A.4. Release 7.2.4

**Release date:** 2003-01-30

This has a variety of fixes from 7.2.3, including fixes to prevent possible data loss.

### A.4.1. Migration to version 7.2.4

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 7.2.X.

### A.4.2. Changes

Fix some additional cases of VACUUM "No one parent tuple was found" error  
Prevent VACUUM from being called inside a function (Bruce)  
Ensure pg\_clog updates are sync'd to disk before marking checkpoint complete  
Avoid integer overflow during large hash joins  
Make GROUP commands work when pg\_group.grolist is large enough to be toasted  
Fix errors in datetime tables; some timezone names weren't being recognized  
Fix integer overflows in circle\_poly(), path\_encode(), path\_add() (Neil)  
Repair long-standing logic errors in lseg\_eq(), lseg\_ne(), lseg\_center()

## A.5. Release 7.2.3

**Release date:** 2002-10-01

This has a variety of fixes from 7.2.2, including fixes to prevent possible data loss.

### A.5.1. Migration to version 7.2.3

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 7.2.X.

### A.5.2. Changes

Prevent possible compressed transaction log loss (Tom)  
Prevent non-superuser from increasing most recent vacuum info (Tom)  
Handle pre-1970 date values in newer versions of glibc (Tom)  
Fix possible hang during server shutdown  
Prevent spinlock hangs on SMP PPC machines (Tomoyuki Nijjima)  
Fix pg\_dump to properly dump FULL JOIN USING (Tom)

## A.6. Release 7.2.2

**Release date:** 2002-08-23

This has a variety of fixes from 7.2.1.

### A.6.1. Migration to version 7.2.2

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 7.2.X.

### A.6.2. Changes

Allow EXECUTE of "CREATE TABLE AS ... SELECT" in PL/pgSQL (Tom)  
Fix for compressed transaction log id wraparound (Tom)  
Fix PQescapeBytea/PQunescapeBytea so that they handle bytes > 0x7f (Tatsuo)  
Fix for psql and pg\_dump crashing when invoked with non-existent long options (Tatsuo)  
Fix crash when invoking geometric operators (Tom)  
Allow OPEN cursor(args) (Tom)  
Fix for rtree\_gist index build (Teodor)  
Fix for dumping user-defined aggregates (Tom)  
Contrib/intarray fixes (Oleg)  
Fix for complex UNION/EXCEPT/INTERSECT queries using parens (Tom)  
Fix to pg\_convert (Tatsuo)  
Fix for crash with long DATA strings (Thomes, Neil)  
Fix for repeat(), lpad(), rpad() and long strings (Neil)

## A.7. Release 7.2.1

**Release date:** 2002-03-21

This has a variety of fixes from 7.2.

### A.7.1. Migration to version 7.2.1

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 7.2.

### A.7.2. Changes

- Ensure that sequence counters do not go backwards after a crash (Tom)
- Fix pgaccess kanji-conversion key binding (Tatsuo)
- Optimizer improvements (Tom)
- Cash I/O improvements (Tom)
- New Russian FAQ
- Compile fix for missing AuthBlockSig (Heiko)
- Additional time zones and time zone fixes (Thomas)
- Allow psql \connect to handle mixed case database and user names (Tom)
- Return proper OID on command completion even with ON INSERT rules (Tom)
- Allow COPY FROM to use 8-bit DELIMITERS (Tatsuo)
- Fix bug in extract/date\_part for milliseconds/microseconds (Tatsuo)
- Improve handling of multiple UNIONS with different lengths (Tom)
- contrib/btree\_gist improvements (Teodor Sigaev)
- contrib/tsearch dictionary improvements, see README.tsearch for an additional installation step (Thomas T. Thai, Teodor Sigaev)
- Fix for array subscripts handling (Tom)
- Allow EXECUTE of "CREATE TABLE AS ... SELECT" in PL/pgSQL (Tom)

## A.8. Release 7.2

**Release date:** 2002-02-04

### A.8.1. Overview

This release improves PostgreSQL for use in high-volume applications.

Major changes in this release:

#### VACUUM

Vacuuming no longer locks tables, thus allowing normal user access during the vacuum. A new `VACUUM FULL` command does old-style vacuum by locking the table and shrinking the on-disk copy of the table.

#### Transactions

There is no longer a problem with installations that exceed four billion transactions.

#### OIDs

OIDs are now optional. Users can now create tables without OIDs for cases where OID usage is excessive.

#### Optimizer

The system now computes histogram column statistics during `ANALYZE`, allowing much better optimizer choices.

#### Security

A new MD5 encryption option allows more secure storage and transfer of passwords. A new Unix-domain socket authentication option is available on Linux and BSD systems.

#### Statistics

Administrators can use the new table access statistics module to get fine-grained information about table and index usage.

#### Internationalization

Program and library messages can now be displayed in several languages.

### A.8.2. Migration to version 7.2

A dump/restore using `pg_dump` is required for those wishing to migrate data from any previous release.

Observe the following incompatibilities:

- The semantics of the `VACUUM` command have changed in this release. You may wish to update your maintenance procedures accordingly.
- In this release, comparisons using `= NULL` will always return false (or `NULL`, more precisely). Previous releases automatically transformed this syntax to `IS NULL`. The old behavior can be re-enabled using a `postgresql.conf` parameter.
- The `pg_hba.conf` and `pg_ident.conf` configuration is now only reloaded after receiving a `SIGHUP` signal, not with each connection.

- The function `octet_length()` now returns the uncompressed data length.
- The date/time value `'current'` is no longer available. You will need to rewrite your applications.
- The `timestamp()`, `time()`, and `interval()` functions are no longer available. Instead of `timestamp()`, use `timestamp 'string'` or `CAST`.

The `SELECT ... LIMIT #,#` syntax will be removed in the next release. You should change your queries to use separate `LIMIT` and `OFFSET` clauses, e.g. `LIMIT 10 OFFSET 20`.

## A.8.3. Changes

### A.8.3.1. Server Operation

Create temporary files in a separate directory (Bruce)  
Delete orphaned temporary files on postmaster startup (Bruce)  
Added unique indexes to some system tables (Tom)  
System table operator reorganization (Oleg Bartunov, Teodor Sigaev, Tom)  
Renamed `pg_log` to `pg_clog` (Tom)  
Enable `SIGTERM`, `SIGQUIT` to kill backends (Jan)  
Removed compile-time limit on number of backends (Tom)  
Better cleanup for semaphore resource failure (Tatsuo, Tom)  
Allow safe transaction ID wraparound (Tom)  
Removed OIDs from some system tables (Tom)  
Removed "triggered data change violation" error check (Tom)  
SPI portal creation of prepared/saved plans (Jan)  
Allow SPI column functions to work for system columns (Tom)  
Long value compression improvement (Tom)  
Statistics collector for table, index access (Jan)  
Truncate extra-long sequence names to a reasonable value (Tom)  
Measure transaction times in milliseconds (Thomas)  
Fix TID sequential scans (Hiroshi)  
Superuser ID now fixed at 1 (Peter E)  
New `pg_ctl` "reload" option (Tom)

### A.8.3.2. Performance

Optimizer improvements (Tom)  
New histogram column statistics for optimizer (Tom)  
Reuse write-ahead log files rather than discarding them (Tom)  
Cache improvements (Tom)  
IS NULL, IS NOT NULL optimizer improvement (Tom)  
Improve lock manager to reduce lock contention (Tom)  
Keep relcache entries for index access support functions (Tom)  
Allow better selectivity with NaN and infinities in NUMERIC (Tom)  
R-tree performance improvements (Kenneth Been)

B-tree splits more efficient (Tom)

### **A.8.3.3. Privileges**

Change UPDATE, DELETE permissions to be distinct (Peter E)

New REFERENCES, TRIGGER privileges (Peter E)

Allow GRANT/REVOKE to/from more than one user at a time (Peter E)

New has\_table\_privilege() function (Joe Conway)

Allow non-superuser to vacuum database (Tom)

New SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION command (Peter E)

Fix bug in privilege modifications on newly created tables (Tom)

Disallow access to pg\_statistic for non-superuser, add user-accessible views (Tom)

### **A.8.3.4. Client Authentication**

Fork postmaster before doing authentication to prevent hangs (Peter E)

Add ident authentication over Unix domain sockets on Linux, \*BSD (Helge Bahmann, Oliver Elphick, Teodor Sigaev, Bruce)

Add a password authentication method that uses MD5 encryption (Bruce)

Allow encryption of stored passwords using MD5 (Bruce)

PAM authentication (Dominic J. Eidson)

Load pg\_hba.conf and pg\_ident.conf only on startup and SIGHUP (Bruce)

### **A.8.3.5. Server Configuration**

Interpretation of some time zone abbreviations as Australian rather than North American now settable at run time (Bruce)

New parameter to set default transaction isolation level (Peter E)

New parameter to enable conversion of "expr = NULL" into "expr IS NULL", off by default (Peter E)

New parameter to control memory usage by VACUUM (Tom)

New parameter to set client authentication timeout (Tom)

New parameter to set maximum number of open files (Tom)

### **A.8.3.6. Queries**

Statements added by INSERT rules now execute after the INSERT (Jan)

Prevent unadorned relation names in target list (Bruce)

NULLs now sort after all normal values in ORDER BY (Tom)

New IS UNKNOWN, IS NOT UNKNOWN Boolean tests (Tom)

New SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE lock mode (Tom)

New EXPLAIN ANALYZE command that shows run times and row counts (Martijn van Oosterhout)

Fix problem with LIMIT and subqueries (Tom)

Fix for LIMIT, DISTINCT ON pushed into subqueries (Tom)

Fix nested EXCEPT/INTERSECT (Tom)

**A.8.3.7. Schema Manipulation**

Fix SERIAL in temporary tables (Bruce)  
 Allow temporary sequences (Bruce)  
 Sequences now use int8 internally (Tom)  
 New SERIAL8 creates int8 columns with sequences, default still SERIAL4 (Tom)  
 Make OIDs optional using WITHOUT OIDS (Tom)  
 Add %TYPE syntax to CREATE TYPE (Ian Lance Taylor)  
 Add ALTER TABLE / DROP CONSTRAINT for CHECK constraints (Christopher Kings-Lynne)  
 New CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION to alter existing function (preserving the function OID) (Gavin Sherry)  
 Add ALTER TABLE / ADD [ UNIQUE | PRIMARY ] (Christopher Kings-Lynne)  
 Allow column renaming in views  
 Make ALTER TABLE / RENAME COLUMN update column names of indexes (Brent Verner)  
 Fix for ALTER TABLE / ADD CONSTRAINT ... CHECK with inherited tables (Stephan Szabo)  
 ALTER TABLE RENAME update foreign-key trigger arguments correctly (Brent Verner)  
 DROP AGGREGATE and COMMENT ON AGGREGATE now accept an agdtype (Tom)  
 Add automatic return type data casting for SQL functions (Tom)  
 Allow GiST indexes to handle NULLs and multikey indexes (Oleg Bartunov, Teodor Sigaev, Tom)  
 Enable partial indexes (Martijn van Oosterhout)

**A.8.3.8. Utility Commands**

Add RESET ALL, SHOW ALL (Marko Kreen)  
 CREATE/ALTER USER/GROUP now allow options in any order (Vince)  
 Add LOCK A, B, C functionality (Neil Padgett)  
 New ENCRYPTED/UNENCRYPTED option to CREATE/ALTER USER (Bruce)  
 New light-weight VACUUM does not lock table; old semantics are available as VACUUM FULL (Tom)  
 Disable COPY TO/FROM on views (Bruce)  
 COPY DELIMITERS string must be exactly one character (Tom)  
 VACUUM warning about index tuples fewer than heap now only appears when appropriate (Martijn van Oosterhout)  
 Fix permission checks for CREATE INDEX (Tom)  
 Disallow inappropriate use of CREATE/DROP INDEX/TRIGGER/VIEW (Tom)

**A.8.3.9. Data Types and Functions**

SUM(), AVG(), COUNT() now uses int8 internally for speed (Tom)  
 Add convert(), convert2() (Tatsuo)  
 New function bit\_length() (Peter E)  
 Make the "n" in CHAR(n)/VARCHAR(n) represents letters, not bytes (Tatsuo)  
 CHAR(), VARCHAR() now reject strings that are too long (Peter E)  
 BIT VARYING now rejects bit strings that are too long (Peter E)  
 BIT now rejects bit strings that do not match declared size (Peter E)  
 INET, CIDR text conversion functions (Alex Pilosov)  
 INET, CIDR operators << and <<= indexable (Alex Pilosov)  
 Bytea \### now requires valid three digit octal number  
 Bytea comparison improvements, now supports =, <>, >, >=, <, and <=

Bytea now supports B-tree indexes  
Bytea now supports LIKE, LIKE...ESCAPE, NOT LIKE, NOT LIKE...ESCAPE  
Bytea now supports concatenation  
New bytea functions: position, substring, trim, btrim, and length  
New encode() function mode, "escaped", converts minimally escaped bytea to/from text  
Add pg\_database\_encoding\_max\_length() (Tatsuo)  
Add pg\_client\_encoding() function (Tatsuo)  
now() returns time with millisecond precision (Thomas)  
New TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIMEZONE data type (Thomas)  
Add ISO date/time specification with "T", yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss (Thomas)  
New xid/int comparison functions (Hiroshi)  
Add precision to TIME, TIMESTAMP, and INTERVAL data types (Thomas)  
Modify type coercion logic to attempt binary-compatible functions first (Tom)  
New encode() function installed by default (Marko Kreen)  
Improved to\_\*(\*) conversion functions (Karel Zak)  
Optimize LIKE/ILIKE when using single-byte encodings (Tatsuo)  
New functions in contrib/pgcrypto: crypt(), hmac(), encrypt(), gen\_salt() (Marko Kreen)  
Correct description of translate() function (Bruce)  
Add INTERVAL argument for SET TIME ZONE (Thomas)  
Add INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH (etc.) syntax (Thomas)  
Optimize length functions when using single-byte encodings (Tatsuo)  
Fix path\_inter, path\_distance, path\_length, dist\_ppath to handle closed paths (Curtis Barrett, Tom)  
octet\_length(text) now returns non-compressed length (Tatsuo, Bruce)  
Handle "July" full name in date/time literals (Greg Sabino Mullane)  
Some datatype() function calls now evaluated differently  
Add support for Julian and ISO time specifications (Thomas)

### **A.8.3.10. Internationalization**

National language support in psql, pg\_dump, libpq, and server (Peter E)  
Message translations in Chinese (simplified, traditional), Czech, French, German, Hungarian, Russian, Swedish (Peter E, Serguei A. Mokhov, Karel Zak, Weiping He, Zhenbang Wei, Kovacs Zoltan)  
Make trim, ltrim, rtrim, btrim, lpad, rpad, translate multibyte aware (Tatsuo)  
Add LATIN5,6,7,8,9,10 support (Tatsuo)  
Add ISO 8859-5,6,7,8 support (Tatsuo)  
Correct LATIN5 to mean ISO-8859-9, not ISO-8859-5 (Tatsuo)  
Make mic2ascii() non-ASCII aware (Tatsuo)  
Reject invalid multibyte character sequences (Tatsuo)

### **A.8.3.11. PL/pgSQL**

Now uses portals for SELECT loops, allowing huge result sets (Jan)  
CURSOR and REFCURSOR support (Jan)  
Can now return open cursors (Jan)  
Add ELSEIF (Klaus Reger)  
Improve PL/pgSQL error reporting, including location of error (Tom)

Allow IS or FOR key words in cursor declaration, for compatibility (Bruce)  
Fix for SELECT ... FOR UPDATE (Tom)  
Fix for PERFORM returning multiple rows (Tom)  
Make PL/pgSQL use the server's type coercion code (Tom)  
Memory leak fix (Jan, Tom)  
Make trailing semicolon optional (Tom)

#### **A.8.3.12. PL/Perl**

New untrusted PL/Perl (Alex Pilosov)  
PL/Perl is now built on some platforms even if libperl is not shared (Peter E)

#### **A.8.3.13. PL/Tcl**

Now reports errorInfo (Vsevolod Lobko)  
Add spi\_lastoid function (bob@redivi.com)

#### **A.8.3.14. PL/Python**

...is new (Andrew Bosma)

#### **A.8.3.15. Psql**

\d displays indexes in unique, primary groupings (Christopher Kings-Lynne)  
Allow trailing semicolons in backslash commands (Greg Sabino Mullane)  
Read password from /dev/tty if possible  
Force new password prompt when changing user and database (Tatsuo, Tom)  
Format the correct number of columns for Unicode (Patrice)

#### **A.8.3.16. Libpq**

New function PQescapeString() to escape quotes in command strings (Florian Weimer)  
New function PQescapeBytea() escapes binary strings for use as SQL string literals

#### **A.8.3.17. JDBC**

Return OID of INSERT (Ken K)  
Handle more data types (Ken K)  
Handle single quotes and newlines in strings (Ken K)  
Handle NULL variables (Ken K)  
Fix for time zone handling (Barry Lind)

- Improved Druid support
- Allow eight-bit characters with non-multibyte server (Barry Lind)
- Support BIT, BINARY types (Ned Wolpert)
- Reduce memory usage (Michael Stephens, Dave Cramer)
- Update DatabaseMetaData (Peter E)
- Add DatabaseMetaData.getCatalogs() (Peter E)
- Encoding fixes (Anders Bengtsson)
- Get/setCatalog methods (Jason Davies)
- DatabaseMetaData.getColumns() now returns column defaults (Jason Davies)
- DatabaseMetaData.getColumns() performance improvement (Jeroen van Vianen)
- Some JDBC1 and JDBC2 merging (Anders Bengtsson)
- Transaction performance improvements (Barry Lind)
- Array fixes (Greg Zoller)
- Serialize addition
- Fix batch processing (Rene Pijlman)
- ExecSQL method reorganization (Anders Bengtsson)
- GetColumn() fixes (Jeroen van Vianen)
- Fix isWritable() function (Rene Pijlman)
- Improved passage of JDBC2 conformance tests (Rene Pijlman)
- Add bytea type capability (Barry Lind)
- Add isNullable() (Rene Pijlman)
- JDBC date/time test suite fixes (Liam Stewart)
- Fix for SELECT 'id' AS xxx FROM table (Dave Cramer)
- Fix DatabaseMetaData to show precision properly (Mark Lillywhite)
- New getImported/getExported keys (Jason Davies)
- MD5 password encryption support (Jeremy Wohl)
- Fix to actually use type cache (Ned Wolpert)

#### **A.8.3.18. ODBC**

- Remove query size limit (Hiroshi)
- Remove text field size limit (Hiroshi)
- Fix for SQLPrimaryKeys in multibyte mode (Hiroshi)
- Allow ODBC procedure calls (Hiroshi)
- Improve boolean handing (Aidan Mountford)
- Most configuration options on setable via DSN (Hiroshi)
- Multibyte, performance fixes (Hiroshi)
- Allow driver to be used with iODBC or unixODBC (Peter E)
- MD5 password encryption support (Bruce)
- Add more compatibility functions to odbc.sql (Peter E)

### **A.8.3.19. ECPG**

EXECUTE ... INTO implemented (Christof Petig)  
Multiple row descriptor support (e.g. CARDINALITY) (Christof Petig)  
Fix for GRANT parameters (Lee Kindness)  
Fix INITIALLY DEFERRED bug  
Various bug fixes (Michael, Christof Petig)  
Auto allocation for indicator variable arrays (int \*ind\_p=NULL)  
Auto allocation for string arrays (char \*\*foo\_pp=NULL)  
ECPGfree\_auto\_mem fixed  
All function names with external linkage are now prefixed by ECPG  
Fixes for arrays of structures (Michael)

### **A.8.3.20. Misc. Interfaces**

Python fix fetchone() (Gerhard Haring)  
Use UTF, Unicode in Tcl where appropriate (Vsevolod Lobko, Reinhard Max)  
Add Tcl COPY TO/FROM (ljb)  
Prevent output of default index op class in pg\_dump (Tom)  
Fix libpgeasy memory leak (Bruce)

### **A.8.3.21. Build and Install**

Configure, dynamic loader, and shared library fixes (Peter E)  
Fixes in QNX 4 port (Bernd Tegge)  
Fixes in Cygwin and Win32 ports (Jason Tishler, Gerhard Haring, Dmitry Yurtaev, Darko Prenosil, Mikhail Terekhov)  
Fix for Win32 socket communication failures (Magnus, Mikhail Terekhov)  
Hurd compile fix (Oliver Elphick)  
BeOS fixes (Cyril Velter)  
Remove configure --enable-unicode-conversion, now enabled by multibyte (Tatsuo)  
AIX fixes (Tatsuo, Andreas)  
Fix parallel make (Peter E)  
Install SQL language manual pages into OS-specific directories (Peter E)  
Rename config.h to pg\_config.h (Peter E)  
Reorganize installation layout of header files (Peter E)

### **A.8.3.22. Source Code**

Remove SEP\_CHAR (Bruce)  
New GUC hooks (Tom)  
Merge GUC and command line handling (Marko Kreen)  
Remove EXTEND INDEX (Martijn van Oosterhout, Tom)  
New pgjindent utility to indent java code (Bruce)  
Remove define of true/false when compiling under C++ (Leandro Fanzone, Tom)  
pgindent fixes (Bruce, Tom)

Replace strcasecmp() with strcmp() where appropriate (Peter E)  
Dynahash portability improvements (Tom)  
Add 'volatile' usage in spinlock structures  
Improve signal handling logic (Tom)

### A.8.3.23. Contrib

New contrib/rtree\_gist (Oleg Bartunov, Teodor Sigaev)  
New contrib/tsearch full-text indexing (Oleg, Teodor Sigaev)  
Add contrib/dblink for remote database access (Joe Conway)  
contrib/ora2pg Oracle conversion utility (Gilles Darold)  
contrib/xml XML conversion utility (John Gray)  
contrib/fulltextindex fixes (Christopher Kings-Lynne)  
New contrib/fuzzystmatch with levenshtein and metaphone, soundex merged (Joe Conway)  
Add contrib/intarray boolean queries, binary search, fixes (Oleg Bartunov)  
New pg\_upgrade utility (Bruce)  
Add new pg\_resetxlog options (Bruce, Tom)

## A.9. Release 7.1.3

**Release date:** 2001-08-15

### A.9.1. Migration to version 7.1.3

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 7.1.X.

### A.9.2. Changes

Remove unused WAL segments of large transactions (Tom)  
Multiaction rule fix (Tom)  
PL/pgSQL memory allocation fix (Jan)  
VACUUM buffer fix (Tom)  
Regression test fixes (Tom)  
pg\_dump fixes for GRANT/REVOKE/comments on views, user-defined types (Tom)  
Fix subselects with DISTINCT ON or LIMIT (Tom)  
BeOS fix  
Disable COPY TO/FROM a view (Tom)  
Cygwin build (Jason Tishler)

## A.10. Release 7.1.2

**Release date:** 2001-05-11

This has one fix from 7.1.1.

### A.10.1. Migration to version 7.1.2

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 7.1.X.

### A.10.2. Changes

Fix PL/pgSQL SELECTs when returning no rows  
Fix for psql backslash core dump  
Referential integrity permission fix  
Optimizer fixes  
pg\_dump cleanups

## A.11. Release 7.1.1

**Release date:** 2001-05-05

This has a variety of fixes from 7.1.

### A.11.1. Migration to version 7.1.1

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 7.1.

### A.11.2. Changes

Fix for numeric MODULO operator (Tom)  
pg\_dump fixes (Philip)  
pg\_dump can dump 7.0 databases (Philip)  
readline 4.2 fixes (Peter E)  
JOIN fixes (Tom)  
AIX, MSWIN, VAX, N32K fixes (Tom)  
Multibytes fixes (Tom)  
Unicode fixes (Tatsuo)  
Optimizer improvements (Tom)

Fix for whole tuples in functions (Tom)  
Fix for pg\_ctl and option strings with spaces (Peter E)  
ODBC fixes (Hiroshi)  
EXTRACT can now take string argument (Thomas)  
Python fixes (Darcy)

## A.12. Release 7.1

**Release date:** 2001-04-13

This release focuses on removing limitations that have existed in the PostgreSQL code for many years.

Major changes in this release:

### Write-ahead Log (WAL)

To maintain database consistency in case of an operating system crash, previous releases of PostgreSQL have forced all data modifications to disk before each transaction commit. With WAL, only one log file must be flushed to disk, greatly improving performance. If you have been using `-F` in previous releases to disable disk flushes, you may want to consider discontinuing its use.

### TOAST

TOAST - Previous releases had a compiled-in row length limit, typically 8k - 32k. This limit made storage of long text fields difficult. With TOAST, long rows of any length can be stored with good performance.

### Outer Joins

We now support outer joins. The UNION/NOT IN workaround for outer joins is no longer required. We use the SQL92 outer join syntax.

### Function Manager

The previous C function manager did not handle null values properly, nor did it support 64-bit CPU's (Alpha). The new function manager does. You can continue using your old custom functions, but you may want to rewrite them in the future to use the new function manager call interface.

### Complex Queries

A large number of complex queries that were unsupported in previous releases now work. Many combinations of views, aggregates, UNION, LIMIT, cursors, subqueries, and inherited tables now work properly. Inherited tables are now accessed by default. Subqueries in FROM are now supported.

### A.12.1. Migration to version 7.1

A dump/restore using `pg_dump` is required for those wishing to migrate data from any previous release.

### A.12.2. Changes

#### Bug Fixes

-----

Many multibyte/Unicode/locale fixes (Tatsuo and others)  
 More reliable ALTER TABLE RENAME (Tom)  
 Kerberos V fixes (David Wragg)  
 Fix for INSERT INTO...SELECT where targetlist has subqueries (Tom)  
 Prompt username/password on standard error (Bruce)  
 Large objects inv\_read/inv\_write fixes (Tom)  
 Fixes for to\_char(), to\_date(), to\_ascii(), and to\_timestamp() (Karel, Daniel Baldoni)  
 Prevent query expressions from leaking memory (Tom)  
 Allow UPDATE of arrays elements (Tom)  
 Wake up lock waiters during cancel (Hiroshi)  
 Fix rare cursor crash when using hash join (Tom)  
 Fix for DROP TABLE/INDEX in rolled-back transaction (Hiroshi)  
 Fix psql crash from \l+ if MULTIBYTE enabled (Peter E)  
 Fix truncation of rule names during CREATE VIEW (Ross Reedstrom)  
 Fix PL/perl (Alex Kapranoff)  
 Disallow LOCK on views (Mark Hollomon)  
 Disallow INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE on views (Mark Hollomon)  
 Disallow DROP RULE, CREATE INDEX, TRUNCATE on views (Mark Hollomon)  
 Allow PL/pgSQL accept non-ASCII identifiers (Tatsuo)  
 Allow views to properly handle GROUP BY, aggregates, DISTINCT (Tom)  
 Fix rare failure with TRUNCATE command (Tom)  
 Allow UNION/INTERSECT/EXCEPT to be used with ALL, subqueries, views, DISTINCT, ORDER BY, SELECT...INTO (Tom)  
 Fix parser failures during aborted transactions (Tom)  
 Allow temporary relations to properly clean up indexes (Bruce)  
 Fix VACUUM problem with moving rows in same page (Tom)  
 Modify pg\_dump to better handle user-defined items in templatel (Philip)  
 Allow LIMIT in VIEW (Tom)  
 Require cursor FETCH to honor LIMIT (Tom)  
 Allow PRIMARY/FOREIGN Key definitions on inherited columns (Stephan)  
 Allow ORDER BY, LIMIT in sub-selects (Tom)  
 Allow UNION in CREATE RULE (Tom)  
 Make ALTER/DROP TABLE rollback-able (Vadim, Tom)  
 Store initdb collation in pg\_control so collation cannot be changed (Tom)  
 Fix INSERT...SELECT with rules (Tom)  
 Fix FOR UPDATE inside views and subselects (Tom)  
 Fix OVERLAPS operators conform to SQL92 spec regarding NULLs (Tom)  
 Fix lpad() and rpad() to handle length less than input string (Tom)  
 Fix use of NOTIFY in some rules (Tom)  
 Overhaul btree code (Tom)  
 Fix NOT NULL use in Pl/pgSQL variables (Tom)  
 Overhaul GIST code (Oleg)  
 Fix CLUSTER to preserve constraints and column default (Tom)

Improved deadlock detection handling (Tom)  
Allow multiple SERIAL columns in a table (Tom)  
Prevent occasional index corruption (Vadim)

Enhancements

-----

Add OUTER JOINS (Tom)  
Function manager overhaul (Tom)  
Allow ALTER TABLE RENAME on indexes (Tom)  
Improve CLUSTER (Tom)  
Improve ps status display for more platforms (Peter E, Marc)  
Improve CREATE FUNCTION failure message (Ross)  
JDBC improvements (Peter, Travis Bauer, Christopher Cain, William Webber,  
Gunnar)  
Grand Unified Configuration scheme/GUC. Many options can now be set in  
data/postgresql.conf, postmaster/postgres flags, or SET commands (Peter E)  
Improved handling of file descriptor cache (Tom)  
New warning code about auto-created table alias entries (Bruce)  
Overhaul initdb process (Tom, Peter E)  
Overhaul of inherited tables; inherited tables now accessed by default;  
new ONLY keyword prevents it (Chris Bitmead, Tom)  
ODBC cleanups/improvements (Nick Gorham, Stephan Szabo, Zoltan Kovacs,  
Michael Fork)  
Allow renaming of temp tables (Tom)  
Overhaul memory manager contexts (Tom)  
pg\_dumpall uses CREATE USER or CREATE GROUP rather using COPY (Peter E)  
Overhaul pg\_dump (Philip Warner)  
Allow pg\_hba.conf secondary password file to specify only username (Peter E)  
Allow TEMPORARY or TEMP keyword when creating temporary tables (Bruce)  
New memory leak checker (Karel)  
New SET SESSION CHARACTERISTICS (Thomas)  
Allow nested block comments (Thomas)  
Add WITHOUT TIME ZONE type qualifier (Thomas)  
New ALTER TABLE ADD CONSTRAINT (Stephan)  
Use NUMERIC accumulators for INTEGER aggregates (Tom)  
Overhaul aggregate code (Tom)  
New VARIANCE and STDDEV() aggregates  
Improve dependency ordering of pg\_dump (Philip)  
New pg\_restore command (Philip)  
New pg\_dump tar output option (Philip)  
New pg\_dump of large objects (Philip)  
New ESCAPE option to LIKE (Thomas)  
New case-insensitive LIKE - ILIKE (Thomas)  
Allow functional indexes to use binary-compatible type (Tom)  
Allow SQL functions to be used in more contexts (Tom)  
New pg\_config utility (Peter E)  
New PL/pgSQL EXECUTE command which allows dynamic SQL and utility statements  
(Jan)  
New PL/pgSQL GET DIAGNOSTICS statement for SPI value access (Jan)  
New quote\_identifiers() and quote\_literal() functions (Jan)  
New ALTER TABLE table OWNER TO user command (Mark Hollomon)  
Allow subselects in FROM, i.e. FROM (SELECT ...) [AS] alias (Tom)  
Update PyGreSQL to version 3.1 (D'Arcy)

Store tables as files named by OID (Vadim)  
New SQL function setval(seq,val,bool) for use in pg\_dump (Philip)  
Require DROP VIEW to remove views, no DROP TABLE (Mark)  
Allow DROP VIEW view1, view2 (Mark)  
Allow multiple objects in DROP INDEX, DROP RULE, and DROP TYPE (Tom)  
Allow automatic conversion to/from Unicode (Tatsuo, Eiji)  
New /contrib/pgcrypto hashing functions (Marko Kreen)  
New pg\_dumpall --globals-only option (Peter E)  
New CHECKPOINT command for WAL which creates new WAL log file (Vadim)  
New AT TIME ZONE syntax (Thomas)  
Allow location of Unix domain socket to be configurable (David J. MacKenzie)  
Allow postmaster to listen on a specific IP address (David J. MacKenzie)  
Allow socket path name to be specified in hostname by using leading slash  
(David J. MacKenzie)  
Allow CREATE DATABASE to specify template database (Tom)  
New utility to convert MySQL schema dumps to SQL92 and PostgreSQL (Thomas)  
New /contrib/rserv replication toolkit (Vadim)  
New file format for COPY BINARY (Tom)  
New /contrib/oid2name to map numeric files to table names (B Palmer)  
New "idle in transaction" ps status message (Marc)  
Update to pgaccess 0.98.7 (Constantin Teodorescu)  
pg\_ctl now defaults to -w (wait) on shutdown, new -l (log) option  
Add rudimentary dependency checking to pg\_dump (Philip)

#### Types

-----

Fix INET/CIDR type ordering and add new functions (Tom)  
Make OID behave as an unsigned type (Tom)  
Allow BIGINT as synonym for INT8 (Peter E)  
New int2 and int8 comparison operators (Tom)  
New BIT and BIT VARYING types (Adriaan Joubert, Tom, Peter E)  
CHAR() no longer faster than VARCHAR() because of TOAST (Tom)  
New GIST seg/cube examples (Gene Selkov)  
Improved round(numeric) handling (Tom)  
Fix CIDR output formatting (Tom)  
New CIDR abbrev() function (Tom)

#### Performance

-----

Write-Ahead Log (WAL) to provide crash recovery with less performance  
overhead (Vadim)  
ANALYZE stage of VACUUM no longer exclusively locks table (Bruce)  
Reduced file seeks (Denis Perchine)  
Improve BTREE code for duplicate keys (Tom)  
Store all large objects in a single table (Denis Perchine, Tom)  
Improve memory allocation performance (Karel, Tom)

#### Source Code

-----

New function manager call conventions (Tom)  
SGI portability fixes (David Kaelbling)  
New configure --enable-syslog option (Peter E)  
New BSDI README (Bruce)

configure script moved to top level, not /src (Peter E)  
Makefile/configuration/compilation overhaul (Peter E)  
New configure --with-python option (Peter E)  
Solaris cleanups (Peter E)  
Overhaul /contrib Makefiles (Karel)  
New OpenSSL configuration option (Magnus, Peter E)  
AIX fixes (Andreas)  
QNX fixes (Maurizio)  
New heap\_open(), heap\_openr() API (Tom)  
Remove colon and semi-colon operators (Thomas)  
New pg\_class.relkind value for views (Mark Hollomon)  
Rename ichar() to chr() (Karel)  
New documentation for btrim(), ascii(), chr(), repeat() (Karel)  
Fixes for NT/Cygwin (Pete Forman)  
AIX port fixes (Andreas)  
New BeOS port (David Reid, Cyril Velter)  
Add proofreader's changes to docs (Addison-Wesley, Bruce)  
New Alpha spinlock code (Adriaan Joubert, Compaq)  
UnixWare port overhaul (Peter E)  
New Darwin/MacOS X port (Peter Bierman, Bruce Hartzler)  
New FreeBSD Alpha port (Alfred)  
Overhaul shared memory segments (Tom)  
Add IBM S/390 support (Neale Ferguson)  
Moved macmanuf to /contrib (Larry Rosenman)  
Syslog improvements (Larry Rosenman)  
New template0 database that contains no user additions (Tom)  
New /contrib/cube and /contrib/seg GIST sample code (Gene Selkov)  
Allow NetBSD's libedit instead of readline (Peter)  
Improved assembly language source code format (Bruce)  
New contrib/pg\_logger  
New --template option to createdb  
New contrib/pg\_control utility (Oliver)  
New FreeBSD tools ipc\_check, start-scripts/freebsd

## A.13. Release 7.0.3

**Release date:** 2000-11-11

This has a variety of fixes from 7.0.2.

### A.13.1. Migration to version 7.0.3

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 7.0.\*.

## A.13.2. Changes

Jdbc fixes (Peter)  
Large object fix (Tom)  
Fix lean in COPY WITH OIDS leak (Tom)  
Fix backwards-index-scan (Tom)  
Fix SELECT ... FOR UPDATE so it checks for duplicate keys (Hiroshi)  
Add --enable-syslog to configure (Marc)  
Fix abort transaction at backend exit in rare cases (Tom)  
Fix for psql \l+ when multibyte enabled (Tatsuo)  
Allow PL/pgSQL to accept non ascii identifiers (Tatsuo)  
Make vacuum always flush buffers (Tom)  
Fix to allow cancel while waiting for a lock (Hiroshi)  
Fix for memory allocation problem in user authentication code (Tom)  
Remove bogus use of int4out() (Tom)  
Fixes for multiple subqueries in COALESCE or BETWEEN (Tom)  
Fix for failure of triggers on heap open in certain cases (Jeroen van Vianen)  
Fix for erroneous selectivity of not-equals (Tom)  
Fix for erroneous use of strcmp() (Tom)  
Fix for bug where storage manager accesses items beyond end of file (Tom)  
Fix to include kernel errno message in all smgr elog messages (Tom)  
Fix for '.' not in PATH at build time (SL Baur)  
Fix for out-of-file-descriptors error (Tom)  
Fix to make pg\_dump dump 'iscachable' flag for functions (Tom)  
Fix for subselect in targetlist of Append node (Tom)  
Fix for mergejoin plans (Tom)  
Fix TRUNCATE failure on relations with indexes (Tom)  
Avoid database-wide restart on write error (Hiroshi)  
Fix nodeMaterial to honor chgParam by recomputing its output (Tom)  
Fix VACUUM problem with moving chain of update tuples when source and destination of a tuple lie on the same page (Tom)  
Fix user.c CommandCounterIncrement (Tom)  
Fix for AM/PM boundary problem in to\_char() (Karel Zak)  
Fix TIME aggregate handling (Tom)  
Fix to\_char() to avoid coredump on NULL input (Tom)  
Buffer fix (Tom)  
Fix for inserting/copying longer multibyte strings into char() data types (Tatsuo)  
Fix for crash of backend, on abort (Tom)

## A.14. Release 7.0.2

Release date: 2000-06-05

This is a repackaging of 7.0.1 with added documentation.

### A.14.1. Migration to version 7.0.2

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 7.\*.

### A.14.2. Changes

Added documentation to tarball.

## A.15. Release 7.0.1

**Release date:** 2000-06-01

This is a cleanup release for 7.0.

### A.15.1. Migration to version 7.0.1

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 7.0.

### A.15.2. Changes

Fix many CLUSTER failures (Tom)  
Allow ALTER TABLE RENAME works on indexes (Tom)  
Fix plpgsql to handle datetime->timestamp and timespan->interval (Bruce)  
New configure --with-setproctitle switch to use setproctitle() (Marc, Bruce)  
Fix the off by one errors in ResultSet from 6.5.3, and more.  
jdbc ResultSet fixes (Joseph Shraibman)  
optimizer tunings (Tom)  
Fix create user for pgaccess  
Fix for UNLISTEN failure  
IRIX fixes (David Kaelbling)  
QNX fixes (Andreas Kardos)  
Reduce COPY IN lock level (Tom)  
Change libpqeasy to use PQconnectdb() style parameters (Bruce)  
Fix pg\_dump to handle OID indexes (Tom)  
Fix small memory leak (Tom)  
Solaris fix for createdb/dropdb (Tatsuo)  
Fix for non-blocking connections (Alfred Perlstein)  
Fix improper recovery after RENAME TABLE failures (Tom)  
Copy pg\_ident.conf.sample into /lib directory in install (Bruce)

Add SJIS UDC (NEC selection IBM kanji) support (Eiji Tokuya)  
Fix too long syslog message (Tatsuo)  
Fix problem with quoted indexes that are too long (Tom)  
JDBC ResultSet.getTimestamp() fix (Gregory Krasnow & Floyd Marinescu)  
ecpg changes (Michael)

## A.16. Release 7.0

**Release date:** 2000-05-08

This release contains improvements in many areas, demonstrating the continued growth of PostgreSQL. There are more improvements and fixes in 7.0 than in any previous release. The developers have confidence that this is the best release yet; we do our best to put out only solid releases, and this one is no exception.

Major changes in this release:

### Foreign Keys

Foreign keys are now implemented, with the exception of `PARTIAL MATCH` foreign keys. Many users have been asking for this feature, and we are pleased to offer it.

### Optimizer Overhaul

Continuing on work started a year ago, the optimizer has been improved, allowing better query plan selection and faster performance with less memory usage.

### Updated psql

psql, our interactive terminal monitor, has been updated with a variety of new features. See the psql manual page for details.

### Join Syntax

SQL92 join syntax is now supported, though only as `INNER JOIN` for this release. `JOIN`, `NATURAL JOIN`, `JOIN/USING`, and `JOIN/ON` are available, as are column correlation names.

### A.16.1. Migration to version 7.0

A dump/restore using `pg_dump` is required for those wishing to migrate data from any previous release of PostgreSQL. For those upgrading from 6.5.\*, you may instead use `pg_upgrade` to upgrade to this release; however, a full dump/reload installation is always the most robust method for upgrades.

Interface and compatibility issues to consider for the new release include:

- The date/time types `datetime` and `timespan` have been superseded by the SQL92-defined types `timestamp` and `interval`. Although there has been some effort to ease the transition by allowing PostgreSQL to recognize the deprecated type names and translate them to the new type names, this mechanism may not be completely transparent to your existing application.
- The optimizer has been substantially improved in the area of query cost estimation. In some cases, this will result in decreased query times as the optimizer makes a better choice for the preferred plan. However, in a small number of cases, usually involving pathological distributions of data, your query times may go up. If you are dealing with large amounts of data, you may want to check your queries to verify performance.
- The JDBC and ODBC interfaces have been upgraded and extended.
- The string function `CHAR_LENGTH` is now a native function. Previous versions translated this into a call to `LENGTH`, which could result in ambiguity with other types implementing `LENGTH` such as the geometric types.

## A.16.2. Changes

### Bug Fixes

-----

Prevent function calls exceeding maximum number of arguments (Tom)  
 Improve CASE construct (Tom)  
 Fix SELECT coalesce(f1,0) FROM int4\_tbl GROUP BY f1 (Tom)  
 Fix SELECT sentence.words[0] FROM sentence GROUP BY sentence.words[0] (Tom)  
 Fix GROUP BY scan bug (Tom)  
 Improvements in SQL grammar processing (Tom)  
 Fix for views involved in INSERT ... SELECT ... (Tom)  
 Fix for SELECT a/2, a/2 FROM test\_missing\_target GROUP BY a/2 (Tom)  
 Fix for subselects in INSERT ... SELECT (Tom)  
 Prevent INSERT ... SELECT ... ORDER BY (Tom)  
 Fixes for relations greater than 2GB, including vacuum  
 Improve propagating system table changes to other backends (Tom)  
 Improve propagating user table changes to other backends (Tom)  
 Fix handling of temp tables in complex situations (Bruce, Tom)  
 Allow table locking at table open, improving concurrent reliability (Tom)  
 Properly quote sequence names in pg\_dump (Ross J. Reedstrom)  
 Prevent DROP DATABASE while others accessing  
 Prevent any rows from being returned by GROUP BY if no rows processed (Tom)  
 Fix SELECT COUNT(1) FROM table WHERE ...' if no rows matching WHERE (Tom)  
 Fix pg\_upgrade so it works for MVCC (Tom)  
 Fix for SELECT ... WHERE x IN (SELECT ... HAVING SUM(x) > 1) (Tom)  
 Fix for "f1 datetime DEFAULT 'now'" (Tom)  
 Fix problems with CURRENT\_DATE used in DEFAULT (Tom)  
 Allow comment-only lines, and ;;; lines too. (Tom)  
 Improve recovery after failed disk writes, disk full (Hiroshi)  
 Fix cases where table is mentioned in FROM but not joined (Tom)  
 Allow HAVING clause without aggregate functions (Tom)  
 Fix for "--" comment and no trailing newline, as seen in perl interface  
 Improve pg\_dump failure error reports (Bruce)

Allow sorts and hashes to exceed 2GB file sizes (Tom)  
 Fix for pg\_dump dumping of inherited rules (Tom)  
 Fix for NULL handling comparisons (Tom)  
 Fix inconsistent state caused by failed CREATE/DROP commands (Hiroshi)  
 Fix for dbname with dash  
 Prevent DROP INDEX from interfering with other backends (Tom)  
 Fix file descriptor leak in verify\_password()  
 Fix for "Unable to identify an operator = \$" problem  
 Fix ODBC so no segfault if CommLog and Debug enabled (Dirk Niggemann)  
 Fix for recursive exit call (Massimo)  
 Fix for extra-long timezones (Jeroen van Vianen)  
 Make pg\_dump preserve primary key information (Peter E)  
 Prevent databases with single quotes (Peter E)  
 Prevent DROP DATABASE inside transaction (Peter E)  
 ecpg memory leak fixes (Stephen Birch)  
 Fix for SELECT null::text, SELECT int4fac(null) and SELECT 2 + (null) (Tom)  
 Y2K timestamp fix (Massimo)  
 Fix for VACUUM 'HEAP\_MOVED\_IN was not expected' errors (Tom)  
 Fix for views with tables/columns containing spaces (Tom)  
 Prevent permissions on indexes (Peter E)  
 Fix for spinlock stuck problem when error is generated (Hiroshi)  
 Fix ipcclean on Linux  
 Fix handling of NULL constraint conditions (Tom)  
 Fix memory leak in odbc driver (Nick Gorham)  
 Fix for permission check on UNION tables (Tom)  
 Fix to allow SELECT 'a' LIKE 'a' (Tom)  
 Fix for SELECT 1 + NULL (Tom)  
 Fixes to CHAR  
 Fix log() on numeric type (Tom)  
 Deprecate ':' and ';' operators  
 Allow vacuum of temporary tables  
 Disallow inherited columns with the same name as new columns  
 Recover or force failure when disk space is exhausted (Hiroshi)  
 Fix INSERT INTO ... SELECT with AS columns matching result columns  
 Fix INSERT ... SELECT ... GROUP BY groups by target columns not source columns (Tom)  
 Fix CREATE TABLE test (a char(5) DEFAULT text ", b int4) with INSERT (Tom)  
 Fix UNION with LIMIT  
 Fix CREATE TABLE x AS SELECT 1 UNION SELECT 2  
 Fix CREATE TABLE test(col char(2) DEFAULT user)  
 Fix mismatched types in CREATE TABLE ... DEFAULT  
 Fix SELECT \* FROM pg\_class where oid in (0,-1)  
 Fix SELECT COUNT('asdf') FROM pg\_class WHERE oid=12  
 Prevent user who can create databases can modifying pg\_database table (Peter E)  
 Fix btree to give a useful elog when key > 1/2 (page - overhead) (Tom)  
 Fix INSERT of 0.0 into DECIMAL(4,4) field (Tom)

Enhancements  
 -----  
 New CLI interface include file sqlcli.h, based on SQL3/SQL98  
 Remove all limits on query length, row length limit still exists (Tom)  
 Update jdbc protocol to 2.0 (Jens Glaser <jens@jens.de>)  
 Add TRUNCATE command to quickly truncate relation (Mike Mascari)

Fix to give super user and createdb user proper update catalog rights (Peter E)

Allow ecpg bool variables to have NULL values (Christof)

Issue ecpg error if NULL value for variable with no NULL indicator (Christof)

Allow ^C to cancel COPY command (Massimo)

Add SET FSYNC and SHOW PG\_OPTIONS commands (Massimo)

Function name overloading for dynamically-loaded C functions (Frankpitt)

Add CmdTuples() to libpq++ (Vince)

New CREATE CONSTRAINT TRIGGER and SET CONSTRAINTS commands (Jan)

Allow CREATE FUNCTION/WITH clause to be used for all language types

configure --enable-debug adds -g (Peter E)

configure --disable-debug removes -g (Peter E)

Allow more complex default expressions (Tom)

First real FOREIGN KEY constraint trigger functionality (Jan)

Add FOREIGN KEY ... MATCH FULL ... ON DELETE CASCADE (Jan)

Add FOREIGN KEY ... MATCH <unspecified> referential actions (Don Baccus)

Allow WHERE restriction on ctid (physical heap location) (Hiroshi)

Move pginterface from contrib to interface directory, rename to pgeasy (Bruce)

Change pgeasy connectdb() parameter ordering (Bruce)

Require SELECT DISTINCT target list to have all ORDER BY columns (Tom)

Add Oracle's COMMENT ON command (Mike Mascari <mascari@yahoo.com>)

libpq's PQsetNoticeProcessor function now returns previous hook (Peter E)

Prevent PQsetNoticeProcessor from being set to NULL (Peter E)

Make USING in COPY optional (Bruce)

Allow subselects in the target list (Tom)

Allow subselects on the left side of comparison operators (Tom)

New parallel regression test (Jan)

Change backend-side COPY to write files with permissions 644 not 666 (Tom)

Force permissions on PGDATA directory to be secure, even if it exists (Tom)

Added psql LASTOID variable to return last inserted oid (Peter E)

Allow concurrent vacuum and remove pg\_vlock vacuum lock file (Tom)

Add permissions check for vacuum (Peter E)

New libpq functions to allow asynchronous connections: PQconnectStart(), PQconnectPoll(), PQresetStart(), PQresetPoll(), PQsetenvStart(), PQsetenvPoll(), PQsetenvAbort (Ewan Mellor)

New libpq PQsetenv() function (Ewan Mellor)

create/alter user extension (Peter E)

New postmaster.pid and postmaster.opts under \$PGDATA (Tatsuo)

New scripts for create/drop user/db (Peter E)

Major psql overhaul (Peter E)

Add const to libpq interface (Peter E)

New libpq function PQoidValue (Peter E)

Show specific non-aggregate causing problem with GROUP BY (Tom)

Make changes to pg\_shadow recreate pg\_pwd file (Peter E)

Add aggregate(DISTINCT ...) (Tom)

Allow flag to control COPY input/output of NULLs (Peter E)

Make postgres user have a password by default (Peter E)

Add CREATE/ALTER/DROP GROUP (Peter E)

All administration scripts now support --long options (Peter E, Karel)

Vacuumdb script now supports --all option (Peter E)

ecpg new portable FETCH syntax

Add ecpg EXEC SQL IFDEF, EXEC SQL IFNDEF, EXEC SQL ELSE, EXEC SQL ELIF and EXEC SQL ENDIF directives

Add pg\_ctl script to control backend start-up (Tatsuo)  
 Add postmaster.opts.default file to store start-up flags (Tatsuo)  
 Allow --with-mb=SQL\_ASCII  
 Increase maximum number of index keys to 16 (Bruce)  
 Increase maximum number of function arguments to 16 (Bruce)  
 Allow configuration of maximum number of index keys and arguments (Bruce)  
 Allow unprivileged users to change their passwords (Peter E)  
 Password authentication enabled; required for new users (Peter E)  
 Disallow dropping a user who owns a database (Peter E)  
 Change initdb option --with-mb to --enable-multibyte  
 Add option for initdb to prompts for superuser password (Peter E)  
 Allow complex type casts like col::numeric(9,2) and col::int2::float8 (Tom)  
 Updated user interfaces on initdb, initlocation, pg\_dump, ipcclean (Peter E)  
 New pg\_char\_to\_encoding() and pg\_encoding\_to\_char() functions (Tatsuo)  
 Libpq non-blocking mode (Alfred Perlstein)  
 Improve conversion of types in casts that don't specify a length  
 New plperl internal programming language (Mark Hollomon)  
 Allow COPY IN to read file that do not end with a newline (Tom)  
 Indicate when long identifiers are truncated (Tom)  
 Allow aggregates to use type equivalency (Peter E)  
 Add Oracle's to\_char(), to\_date(), to\_datetime(), to\_timestamp(), to\_number()  
 conversion functions (Karel Zak <zakkr@zf.jcu.cz>)  
 Add SELECT DISTINCT ON (expr [, expr ...]) targetlist ... (Tom)  
 Check to be sure ORDER BY is compatible with the DISTINCT operation (Tom)  
 Add NUMERIC and int8 types to ODBC  
 Improve EXPLAIN results for Append, Group, Agg, Unique (Tom)  
 Add ALTER TABLE ... ADD FOREIGN KEY (Stephan Szabo)  
 Allow SELECT .. FOR UPDATE in PL/pgSQL (Hiroshi)  
 Enable backward sequential scan even after reaching EOF (Hiroshi)  
 Add btree indexing of boolean values, >= and <= (Don Baccus)  
 Print current line number when COPY FROM fails (Massimo)  
 Recognize POSIX time zone e.g. "PST+8" and "GMT-8" (Thomas)  
 Add DEC as synonym for DECIMAL (Thomas)  
 Add SESSION\_USER as SQL92 keyword, same as CURRENT\_USER (Thomas)  
 Implement SQL92 column aliases (aka correlation names) (Thomas)  
 Implement SQL92 join syntax (Thomas)  
 Make INTERVAL reserved word allowed as a column identifier (Thomas)  
 Implement REINDEX command (Hiroshi)  
 Accept ALL in aggregate function SUM(ALL col) (Tom)  
 Prevent GROUP BY from using column aliases (Tom)  
 New psql \encoding option (Tatsuo)  
 Allow PQrequestCancel() to terminate when in waiting-for-lock state (Hiroshi)  
 Allow negation of a negative number in all cases  
 Add ecpg descriptors (Christof, Michael)  
 Allow CREATE VIEW v AS SELECT f1::char(8) FROM tbl  
 Allow casts with length, like foo::char(8)  
 New libpq functions PQsetClientEncoding(), PQclientEncoding() (Tatsuo)  
 Add support for SJIS user defined characters (Tatsuo)  
 Larger views/rules supported  
 Make libpq's PQconnndefaults() thread-safe (Tom)  
 Disable // as comment to be ANSI conforming, should use -- (Tom)  
 Allow column aliases on views CREATE VIEW name (collist)  
 Fixes for views with subqueries (Tom)

Allow UPDATE table SET fld = (SELECT ...) (Tom)  
 SET command options no longer require quotes  
 Update pgaccess to 0.98.6  
 New SET SEED command  
 New pg\_options.sample file  
 New SET FSYNC command (Massimo)  
 Allow pg\_descriptions when creating tables  
 Allow pg\_descriptions when creating types, columns, and functions  
 Allow psql \copy to allow delimiters (Peter E)  
 Allow psql to print nulls as distinct from "" [null] (Peter E)

#### Types

-----

Many array fixes (Tom)  
 Allow bare column names to be subscripted as arrays (Tom)  
 Improve type casting of int and float constants (Tom)  
 Cleanups for int8 inputs, range checking, and type conversion (Tom)  
 Fix for SELECT timespan('21:11:26'::time) (Tom)  
 netmask('x.x.x.x/0') is 255.255.255.255 instead of 0.0.0.0 (Oleg Sharoiko)  
 Add btree index on NUMERIC (Jan)  
 Perl fix for large objects containing NUL characters (Douglas Thomson)  
 ODBC fix for for large objects (free)  
 Fix indexing of cidr data type  
 Fix for Ethernet MAC addresses (macaddr type) comparisons  
 Fix for date/time types when overflows happened in computations (Tom)  
 Allow array on int8 (Peter E)  
 Fix for rounding/overflow of NUMERIC type, like NUMERIC(4,4) (Tom)  
 Allow NUMERIC arrays  
 Fix bugs in NUMERIC ceil() and floor() functions (Tom)  
 Make char\_length()/octet\_length including trailing blanks (Tom)  
 Made abstime/reftime use int4 instead of time\_t (Peter E)  
 New lztext data type for compressed text fields  
 Revise code to handle coercion of int and float constants (Tom)  
 Start at new code to implement a BIT and BIT VARYING type (Adriaan Joubert)  
 NUMERIC now accepts scientific notation (Tom)  
 NUMERIC to int4 rounds (Tom)  
 Convert float4/8 to NUMERIC properly (Tom)  
 Allow type conversion with NUMERIC (Thomas)  
 Make ISO date style (2000-02-16 09:33) the default (Thomas)  
 Add NATIONAL CHAR [ VARYING ] (Thomas)  
 Allow NUMERIC round and trunc to accept negative scales (Tom)  
 New TIME WITH TIME ZONE type (Thomas)  
 Add MAX()/MIN() on time type (Thomas)  
 Add abs(), mod(), fac() for int8 (Thomas)  
 Rename functions to round(), sqrt(), cbrt(), pow() for float8 (Thomas)  
 Add transcendental math functions (e.g. sin(), acos()) for float8 (Thomas)  
 Add exp() and ln() for NUMERIC type  
 Rename NUMERIC power() to pow() (Thomas)  
 Improved TRANSLATE() function (Edwin Ramirez, Tom)  
 Allow X=-Y operators (Tom)  
 Allow SELECT float8(COUNT(\*))/(SELECT COUNT(\*) FROM t) FROM t GROUP BY f1; (Tom)  
 Allow LOCALE to use indexes in regular expression searches (Tom)  
 Allow creation of functional indexes to use default types

Performance

-----

Prevent exponential space consumption with many AND's and OR's (Tom)  
 Collect attribute selectivity values for system columns (Tom)  
 Reduce memory usage of aggregates (Tom)  
 Fix for LIKE optimization to use indexes with multibyte encodings (Tom)  
 Fix r-tree index optimizer selectivity (Thomas)  
 Improve optimizer selectivity computations and functions (Tom)  
 Optimize btree searching for cases where many equal keys exist (Tom)  
 Enable fast LIKE index processing only if index present (Tom)  
 Re-use free space on index pages with duplicates (Tom)  
 Improve hash join processing (Tom)  
 Prevent descending sort if result is already sorted(Hiroshi)  
 Allow commuting of index scan query qualifications (Tom)  
 Prefer index scans in cases where ORDER BY/GROUP BY is required (Tom)  
 Allocate large memory requests in fix-sized chunks for performance (Tom)  
 Fix vacuum's performance by reducing memory allocation requests (Tom)  
 Implement constant-expression simplification (Bernard Frankpitt, Tom)  
 Use secondary columns to be used to determine start of index scan (Hiroshi)  
 Prevent quadruple use of disk space when doing internal sorting (Tom)  
 Faster sorting by calling fewer functions (Tom)  
 Create system indexes to match all system caches (Bruce, Hiroshi)  
 Make system caches use system indexes (Bruce)  
 Make all system indexes unique (Bruce)  
 Improve pg\_statistics management for VACUUM speed improvement (Tom)  
 Flush backend cache less frequently (Tom, Hiroshi)  
 COPY now reuses previous memory allocation, improving performance (Tom)  
 Improve optimization cost estimation (Tom)  
 Improve optimizer estimate of range queries  $x > \text{lowbound}$  AND  $x < \text{highbound}$  (Tom)  
 Use DNF instead of CNF where appropriate (Tom, Taral)  
 Further cleanup for OR-of-AND WHERE-clauses (Tom)  
 Make use of index in OR clauses ( $x = 1$  AND  $y = 2$ ) OR ( $x = 2$  AND  $y = 4$ ) (Tom)  
 Smarter optimizer computations for random index page access (Tom)  
 New SET variable to control optimizer costs (Tom)  
 Optimizer queries based on LIMIT, OFFSET, and EXISTS qualifications (Tom)  
 Reduce optimizer internal housekeeping of join paths for speedup (Tom)  
 Major subquery speedup (Tom)  
 Fewer fsync writes when fsync is not disabled (Tom)  
 Improved LIKE optimizer estimates (Tom)  
 Prevent fsync in SELECT-only queries (Vadim)  
 Make index creation use psort code, because it is now faster (Tom)  
 Allow creation of sort temp tables > 1 Gig

Source Tree Changes

-----

Fix for linux PPC compile  
 New generic expression-tree-walker subroutine (Tom)  
 Change form() to varargform() to prevent portability problems  
 Improved range checking for large integers on Alphas  
 Clean up #include in /include directory (Bruce)  
 Add scripts for checking includes (Bruce)  
 Remove un-needed #include's from \*.c files (Bruce)

Change #include's to use <> and "" as appropriate (Bruce)  
Enable WIN32 compilation of libpq  
Alpha spinlock fix from Uncle George <gatgul@voicenet.com>  
Overhaul of optimizer data structures (Tom)  
Fix to cygipc library (Yutaka Tanida)  
Allow pgsqll to work on newer Cygwin snapshots (Dan)  
New catalog version number (Tom)  
Add Linux ARM  
Rename heap\_replace to heap\_update  
Update for QNX (Dr. Andreas Kardos)  
New platform-specific regression handling (Tom)  
Rename oid8 -> oidvector and int28 -> int2vector (Bruce)  
Included all yacc and lex files into the distribution (Peter E.)  
Remove lextest, no longer needed (Peter E)  
Fix for libpq and psql on Win32 (Magnus)  
Internally change datetime and timespan into timestamp and interval (Thomas)  
Fix for plpgsql on BSD/OS  
Add SQL\_ASCII test case to the regression test (Tatsuo)  
configure --with-mb now deprecated (Tatsuo)  
NT fixes  
NetBSD fixes (Johnny C. Lam <lamj@stat.cmu.edu>)  
Fixes for Alpha compiles  
New multibyte encodings

## A.17. Release 6.5.3

**Release date:** 1999-10-13

This is basically a cleanup release for 6.5.2. We have added a new PgAccess that was missing in 6.5.2, and installed an NT-specific fix.

### A.17.1. Migration to version 6.5.3

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 6.5.\*.

### A.17.2. Changes

Updated version of pgaccess 0.98  
NT-specific patch  
Fix dumping rules on inherited tables

## A.18. Release 6.5.2

**Release date:** 1999-09-15

This is basically a cleanup release for 6.5.1. We have fixed a variety of problems reported by 6.5.1 users.

### A.18.1. Migration to version 6.5.2

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 6.5.\*.

### A.18.2. Changes

```

subselect+CASE fixes(Tom)
Add SHLIB_LINK setting for solaris_i386 and solaris_sparc ports(Daren Sefcik)
Fixes for CASE in WHERE join clauses(Tom)
Fix BTScan abort(Tom)
Repair the check for redundant UNIQUE and PRIMARY KEY indexes(Thomas)
Improve it so that it checks for multicolumn constraints(Thomas)
Fix for Win32 making problem with MB enabled(Hiroki Kataoka)
Allow BSD yacc and bison to compile pl code(Bruce)
Fix SET NAMES working
int8 fixes(Thomas)
Fix vacuum's memory consumption(Hiroshi,Tatsuo)
Reduce the total memory consumption of vacuum(Tom)
Fix for timestamp(datetime)
Rule deparsing bugfixes(Tom)
Fix quoting problems in mkMakefile.tcldefs.sh.in and mkMakefile.tkdefs.sh.in(Tom)
This is to re-use space on index pages freed by vacuum(Vadim)
document -x for pg_dump(Bruce)
Fix for unary operators in rule deparser(Tom)
Comment out FileUnlink of excess segments during mdtruncate()(Tom)
IRIX linking fix from Yu Cao >yucao@falcon.kla-tencor.com<
Repair logic error in LIKE: should not return LIKE_ABORT
    when reach end of pattern before end of text(Tom)
Repair incorrect cleanup of heap memory allocation during transaction abort(Tom)
Updated version of pgaccess 0.98

```

## A.19. Release 6.5.1

**Release date:** 1999-07-15

This is basically a cleanup release for 6.5. We have fixed a variety of problems reported by 6.5 users.

### A.19.1. Migration to version 6.5.1

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 6.5.

### A.19.2. Changes

- Add NT README file
- Portability fixes for linux\_ppc, IRIX, linux\_alpha, OpenBSD, alpha
- Remove QUERY\_LIMIT, use SELECT...LIMIT
- Fix for EXPLAIN on inheritance(Tom)
- Patch to allow vacuum on multisegment tables(Hiroshi)
- R-Tree optimizer selectivity fix(Tom)
- ACL file descriptor leak fix(Atsushi Ogawa)
- New expression subtree code(Tom)
- Avoid disk writes for read-only transactions(Vadim)
- Fix for removal of temp tables if last transaction was aborted(Bruce)
- Fix to prevent too large tuple from being created(Bruce)
- plpgsql fixes
- Allow port numbers 32k - 64k(Bruce)
- Add ^ precedence(Bruce)
- Rename sort files called pg\_temp to pg\_sorttemp(Bruce)
- Fix for microseconds in time values(Tom)
- Tutorial source cleanup
- New linux\_m68k port
- Fix for sorting of NULL's in some cases(Tom)
- Shared library dependencies fixed (Tom)
- Fixed glitches affecting GROUP BY in subselects(Tom)
- Fix some compiler warnings (Tomoaki Nishiyama)
- Add Win1250 (Czech) support (Pavel Behal)

## A.20. Release 6.5

**Release date:** 1999-06-09

This release marks a major step in the development team's mastery of the source code we inherited from Berkeley. You will see we are now easily adding major features, thanks to the increasing size and experience of our world-wide development team.

Here is a brief summary of the more notable changes:

### Multiversion concurrency control(MVCC)

This removes our old table-level locking, and replaces it with a locking system that is superior to most commercial database systems. In a traditional system, each row that is modified is locked until committed, preventing reads by other users. MVCC uses the natural multiversion nature of PostgreSQL to allow readers to continue reading consistent data during writer activity. Writers continue to use the compact `pg_log` transaction system. This is all performed without having to allocate a lock for every row like traditional database systems. So, basically, we no longer are restricted by simple table-level locking; we have something better than row-level locking.

### Hot backups from `pg_dump`

`pg_dump` takes advantage of the new MVCC features to give a consistent database dump/backup while the database stays online and available for queries.

### Numeric data type

We now have a true numeric data type, with user-specified precision.

### Temporary tables

Temporary tables are guaranteed to have unique names within a database session, and are destroyed on session exit.

### New SQL features

We now have CASE, INTERSECT, and EXCEPT statement support. We have new LIMIT/OFFSET, SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL, SELECT ... FOR UPDATE, and an improved LOCK TABLE command.

### Speedups

We continue to speed up PostgreSQL, thanks to the variety of talents within our team. We have sped up memory allocation, optimization, table joins, and row transfer routines.

### Ports

We continue to expand our port list, this time including Windows NT/ix86 and NetBSD/arm32.

### Interfaces

Most interfaces have new versions, and existing functionality has been improved.

### Documentation

New and updated material is present throughout the documentation. New FAQs have been contributed for SGI and AIX platforms. The *Tutorial* has introductory information on SQL from Stefan Simkovics. For the *User's Guide*, there are reference pages covering the postmaster and more utility programs, and a new appendix contains details on date/time behavior. The *Administrator's Guide* has a new chapter on troubleshooting from Tom Lane. And the *Programmer's Guide* has a description of query processing, also from Stefan, and details on obtaining the PostgreSQL source tree via anonymous CVS and CVSup.

## A.20.1. Migration to version 6.5

A dump/restore using `pg_dump` is required for those wishing to migrate data from any previous release of PostgreSQL. `pg_upgrade` can *not* be used to upgrade to this release because the on-disk structure of the tables has changed compared to previous releases.

The new Multiversion Concurrency Control (MVCC) features can give somewhat different behaviors in multiuser environments. *Read and understand the following section to ensure that your existing applications will give you the behavior you need.*

### A.20.1.1. Multiversion Concurrency Control

Because readers in 6.5 don't lock data, regardless of transaction isolation level, data read by one transaction can be overwritten by another. In other words, if a row is returned by `SELECT` it doesn't mean that this row really exists at the time it is returned (i.e. sometime after the statement or transaction began) nor that the row is protected from being deleted or updated by concurrent transactions before the current transaction does a commit or rollback.

To ensure the actual existence of a row and protect it against concurrent updates one must use `SELECT FOR UPDATE` or an appropriate `LOCK TABLE` statement. This should be taken into account when porting applications from previous releases of PostgreSQL and other environments.

Keep the above in mind if you are using `contrib/refint.*` triggers for referential integrity. Additional techniques are required now. One way is to use `LOCK parent_table IN SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE MODE` command if a transaction is going to update/delete a primary key and use `LOCK parent_table IN SHARE MODE` command if a transaction is going to update/insert a foreign key.

**Note:** Note that if you run a transaction in `SERIALIZABLE` mode then you must execute the `LOCK` commands above before execution of any DML statement (`SELECT/INSERT/DELETE/UPDATE/FETCH/COPY_TO`) in the transaction.

These inconveniences will disappear in the future when the ability to read dirty (uncommitted) data (regardless of isolation level) and true referential integrity will be implemented.

## A.20.2. Changes

### Bug Fixes

-----

```
Fix text<->float8 and text<->float4 conversion functions(Thomas)
Fix for creating tables with mixed-case constraints(Billy)
Change exp()/pow() behavior to generate error on underflow/overflow(Jan)
Fix bug in pg_dump -z
Memory overrun cleanups(Tatsuo)
Fix for lo_import crash(Tatsuo)
Adjust handling of data type names to suppress double quotes(Thomas)
Use type coercion for matching columns and DEFAULT(Thomas)
Fix deadlock so it only checks once after one second of sleep(Bruce)
```

Fixes for aggregates and PL/pgsql(Hiroshi)  
Fix for subquery crash(Vadim)  
Fix for libpq function PQfnumber and case-insensitive names(Bahman Rafatjoo)  
Fix for large object write-in-middle, no extra block, memory consumption(Tatsuo)  
Fix for pg\_dump -d or -D and quote special characters in INSERT  
Repair serious problems with dynahash(Tom)  
Fix INET/CIDR portability problems  
Fix problem with selectivity error in ALTER TABLE ADD COLUMN(Bruce)  
Fix executor so mergejoin of different column types works(Tom)  
Fix for Alpha OR selectivity bug  
Fix OR index selectivity problem(Bruce)  
Fix so \d shows proper length for char()/varchar()(Ryan)  
Fix tutorial code(Clark)  
Improve destroyuser checking(Oliver)  
Fix for Kerberos(Rodney McDuff)  
Fix for dropping database while dirty buffers(Bruce)  
Fix so sequence nextval() can be case-sensitive(Bruce)  
Fix != operator  
Drop buffers before destroying database files(Bruce)  
Fix case where executor evaluates functions twice(Tatsuo)  
Allow sequence nextval actions to be case-sensitive(Bruce)  
Fix optimizer indexing not working for negative numbers(Bruce)  
Fix for memory leak in executor with fjIsNull  
Fix for aggregate memory leaks(Erik Riedel)  
Allow username containing a dash GRANT permissions  
Cleanup of NULL in inet types  
Clean up system table bugs(Tom)  
Fix problems of PAGER and \? command(Masaaki Sakaida)  
Reduce default multisegment file size limit to 1GB(Peter)  
Fix for dumping of CREATE OPERATOR(Tom)  
Fix for backward scanning of cursors(Hiroshi Inoue)  
Fix for COPY FROM STDIN when using \i(Tom)  
Fix for subselect is compared inside an expression(Jan)  
Fix handling of error reporting while returning rows(Tom)  
Fix problems with reference to array types(Tom,Jan)  
Prevent UPDATE SET oid(Jan)  
Fix pg\_dump so -t option can handle case-sensitive tablenamees  
Fixes for GROUP BY in special cases(Tom, Jan)  
Fix for memory leak in failed queries(Tom)  
DEFAULT now supports mixed-case identifiers(Tom)  
Fix for multisegment uses of DROP/RENAME table, indexes(Ole Gjerde)  
Disable use of pg\_dump with both -o and -d options(Bruce)  
Allow pg\_dump to properly dump GROUP permissions(Bruce)  
Fix GROUP BY in INSERT INTO table SELECT \* FROM table2(Jan)  
Fix for computations in views(Jan)  
Fix for aggregates on array indexes(Tom)  
Fix for DEFAULT handles single quotes in value requiring too many quotes  
Fix security problem with non-super users importing/exporting large objects(Tom)  
Rollback of transaction that creates table cleaned up properly(Tom)  
Fix to allow long table and column names to generate proper serial names(Tom)

Enhancements

-----

Add "vacuumdb" utility  
 Speed up libpq by allocating memory better(Tom)  
 EXPLAIN all indexes used(Tom)  
 Implement CASE, COALESCE, NULLIF expression(Thomas)  
 New pg\_dump table output format(Constantin)  
 Add string min()/max() functions(Thomas)  
 Extend new type coercion techniques to aggregates(Thomas)  
 New moddatetime contrib(Terry)  
 Update to pgaccess 0.96(Constantin)  
 Add routines for single-byte "char" type(Thomas)  
 Improved substr() function(Thomas)  
 Improved multibyte handling(Tatsuo)  
 Multiversion concurrency control/MVCC(Vadim)  
 New Serialized mode(Vadim)  
 Fix for tables over 2gigs(Peter)  
 New SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL(Vadim)  
 New LOCK TABLE IN ... MODE(Vadim)  
 Update ODBC driver(Byron)  
 New NUMERIC data type(Jan)  
 New SELECT FOR UPDATE(Vadim)  
 Handle "NaN" and "Infinity" for input values(Jan)  
 Improved date/year handling(Thomas)  
 Improved handling of backend connections(Magnus)  
 New options ELOG\_TIMESTAMPS and USE\_SYSLOG options for log files(Massimo)  
 New TCL\_ARRAYS option(Massimo)  
 New INTERSECT and EXCEPT(Stefan)  
 New pg\_index.indisprimary for primary key tracking(D'Arcy)  
 New pg\_dump option to allow dropping of tables before creation(Brook)  
 Speedup of row output routines(Tom)  
 New READ COMMITTED isolation level(Vadim)  
 New TEMP tables/indexes(Bruce)  
 Prevent sorting if result is already sorted(Jan)  
 New memory allocation optimization(Jan)  
 Allow psql to do \p\g(Bruce)  
 Allow multiple rule actions(Jan)  
 Added LIMIT/OFFSET functionality(Jan)  
 Improve optimizer when joining a large number of tables(Bruce)  
 New intro to SQL from S. Simkovics' Master's Thesis (Stefan, Thomas)  
 New intro to backend processing from S. Simkovics' Master's Thesis (Stefan)  
 Improved int8 support(Ryan Bradetich, Thomas, Tom)  
 New routines to convert between int8 and text/varchar types(Thomas)  
 New bushy plans, where meta-tables are joined(Bruce)  
 Enable right-hand queries by default(Bruce)  
 Allow reliable maximum number of backends to be set at configure time  
     (--with-maxbackends and postmaster switch (-N backends))(Tom)  
 GEQO default now 10 tables because of optimizer speedups(Tom)  
 Allow NULL=Var for MS-SQL portability(Michael, Bruce)  
 Modify contrib check\_primary\_key() so either "automatic" or "dependent"(Anand)  
 Allow psql \d on a view show query(Ryan)  
 Speedup for LIKE(Bruce)  
 Ecpq fixes/features, see src/interfaces/ecpg/ChangeLog file(Michael)  
 JDBC fixes/features, see src/interfaces/jdbc/CHANGELOG(Peter)  
 Make % operator have precedence like /(Bruce)

Add new postgres -O option to allow system table structure changes(Bruce)  
Update contrib/pginterface/findoidjoins script(Tom)  
Major speedup in vacuum of deleted rows with indexes(Vadim)  
Allow non-SQL functions to run different versions based on arguments(Tom)  
Add -E option that shows actual queries sent by \dt and friends(Masaaki Sakaida)  
Add version number in start-up banners for psql(Masaaki Sakaida)  
New contrib/vacuumlo removes large objects not referenced(Peter)  
New initialization for table sizes so non-vacuumed tables perform better(Tom)  
Improve error messages when a connection is rejected(Tom)  
Support for arrays of char() and varchar() fields(Massimo)  
Overhaul of hash code to increase reliability and performance(Tom)  
Update to PyGreSQL 2.4(D'Arcy)  
Changed debug options so -d4 and -d5 produce different node displays(Jan)  
New pg\_options: pretty\_plan, pretty\_parse, pretty\_rewritten(Jan)  
Better optimization statistics for system table access(Tom)  
Better handling of non-default block sizes(Massimo)  
Improve GEQO optimizer memory consumption(Tom)  
UNION now supports ORDER BY of columns not in target list(Jan)  
Major libpq++ improvements(Vince Vielhaber)  
pg\_dump now uses -z(ACL's) as default(Bruce)  
backend cache, memory speedups(Tom)  
have pg\_dump do everything in one snapshot transaction(Vadim)  
fix for large object memory leakage, fix for pg\_dumping(Tom)  
INET type now respects netmask for comparisons  
Make VACUUM ANALYZE only use a readlock(Vadim)  
Allow VIEWS on UNIONS(Jan)  
pg\_dump now can generate consistent snapshots on active databases(Vadim)

#### Source Tree Changes

-----  
Improve port matching(Tom)  
Portability fixes for SunOS  
Add NT/Win32 backend port and enable dynamic loading(Magnus and Daniel Horak)  
New port to Cobalt Qube(Mips) running Linux(Tatsuo)  
Port to NetBSD/m68k(Mr. Mutsuki Nakajima)  
Port to NetBSD/sun3(Mr. Mutsuki Nakajima)  
Port to NetBSD/macppc(Toshimi Aoki)  
Fix for tcl/tk configuration(Vince)  
Removed CURRENT keyword for rule queries(Jan)  
NT dynamic loading now works(Daniel Horak)  
Add ARM32 support(Andrew McMurry)  
Better support for HP-UX 11 and UnixWare  
Improve file handling to be more uniform, prevent file descriptor leak(Tom)  
New install commands for plpgsql(Jan)

## A.21. Release 6.4.2

**Release date:** 1998-12-20

The 6.4.1 release was improperly packaged. This also has one additional bug fix.

### A.21.1. Migration to version 6.4.2

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 6.4.\*.

### A.21.2. Changes

Fix for datetime constant problem on some platforms(Thomas)

## A.22. Release 6.4.1

**Release date:** 1998-12-18

This is basically a cleanup release for 6.4. We have fixed a variety of problems reported by 6.4 users.

### A.22.1. Migration to version 6.4.1

A dump/restore is *not* required for those running 6.4.

### A.22.2. Changes

Add `pg_dump -N` flag to force double quotes around identifiers. This is the default(Thomas)  
 Fix for NOT in where clause causing crash(Bruce)  
 EXPLAIN VERBOSE coredump fix(Vadim)  
 Fix shared-library problems on Linux  
 Fix test for table existence to allow mixed-case and whitespace in the table name(Thomas)  
 Fix a couple of `pg_dump` bugs  
 Configure matches `template/.similar` entries better(Tom)  
 Change builtin function names from `SPI_*` to `spi_*`  
 OR WHERE clause fix(Vadim)  
 Fixes for mixed-case table names(Billy)  
 contrib/linux/postgres.init.csh/sh fix(Thomas)  
 libpq memory overrun fix

SunOS fixes(Tom)  
 Change exp() behavior to generate error on underflow(Thomas)  
 pg\_dump fixes for memory leak, inheritance constraints, layout change  
 update pgaccess to 0.93  
 Fix prototype for 64-bit platforms  
 Multibyte fixes(Tatsuo)  
 New ecpg man page  
 Fix memory overruns(Tatsuo)  
 Fix for lo\_import() crash(Bruce)  
 Better search for install program(Tom)  
 Timezone fixes(Tom)  
 HP-UX fixes(Tom)  
 Use implicit type coercion for matching DEFAULT values(Thomas)  
 Add routines to help with single-byte (internal) character type(Thomas)  
 Compilation of libpq for Win32 fixes(Magnus)  
 Upgrade to PyGreSQL 2.2(D'Arcy)

## A.23. Release 6.4

**Release date:** 1998-10-30

There are *many* new features and improvements in this release. Thanks to our developers and maintainers, nearly every aspect of the system has received some attention since the previous release. Here is a brief, incomplete summary:

- Views and rules are now functional thanks to extensive new code in the rewrite rules system from Jan Wieck. He also wrote a chapter on it for the *Programmer's Guide*.
- Jan also contributed a second procedural language, PL/pgSQL, to go with the original PL/pgTCL procedural language he contributed last release.
- We have optional multiple-byte character set support from Tatsuo Ishii to complement our existing locale support.
- Client/server communications has been cleaned up, with better support for asynchronous messages and interrupts thanks to Tom Lane.
- The parser will now perform automatic type coercion to match arguments to available operators and functions, and to match columns and expressions with target columns. This uses a generic mechanism which supports the type extensibility features of PostgreSQL. There is a new chapter in the *User's Guide* which covers this topic.
- Three new data types have been added. Two types, `inet` and `cidr`, support various forms of IP network, subnet, and machine addressing. There is now an 8-byte integer type available on some platforms. See the chapter on data types in the *User's Guide* for details. A fourth type, `serial`, is now supported by the parser as an amalgam of the `int4` type, a sequence, and a unique index.

- Several more SQL92-compatible syntax features have been added, including `INSERT DEFAULT VALUES`
- The automatic configuration and installation system has received some attention, and should be more robust for more platforms than it has ever been.

### A.23.1. Migration to version 6.4

A dump/restore using `pg_dump` or `pg_dumpall` is required for those wishing to migrate data from any previous release of PostgreSQL.

### A.23.2. Changes

#### Bug Fixes

-----

Fix for a tiny memory leak in `PQsetdb/PQfinish`(Bryan)  
 Remove `char2-16` data types, use `char/varchar`(Darren)  
`Pqfn` not handles a `NOTICE` message(Anders)  
 Reduced busywaiting overhead for spinlocks with many backends (dg)  
 Stuck spinlock detection (dg)  
 Fix up "ISO-style" timespan decoding and encoding(Thomas)  
 Fix problem with table drop after rollback of transaction(Vadim)  
 Change error message and remove non-functional update message(Vadim)  
 Fix for `COPY` array checking  
 Fix for `SELECT 1 UNION SELECT NULL`  
 Fix for buffer leaks in large object calls(Pascal)  
 Change owner from `oid` to `int4` type(Bruce)  
 Fix a bug in the oracle compatibility functions `btrim()` `ltrim()` and `rtrim()`  
 Fix for shared invalidation cache overflow(Massimo)  
 Prevent file descriptor leaks in failed `COPY`'s(Bruce)  
 Fix memory leak in `libpgtcl`'s `pg_select`(Constantin)  
 Fix problems with username/passwords over 8 characters(Tom)  
 Fix problems with handling of asynchronous `NOTIFY` in backend(Tom)  
 Fix of many bad system table entries(Tom)

#### Enhancements

-----

Upgrade `ecpg` and `ecpglib`, see `src/interfaces/ecpg/ChangeLog`(Michael)  
 Show the index used in an `EXPLAIN`(Zeugswetter)  
`EXPLAIN` invokes rule system and shows plan(s) for rewritten queries(Jan)  
 Multibyte awareness of many data types and functions, via `configure`(Tatsuo)  
 New `configure --with-mb` option(Tatsuo)  
 New `initdb --pgencoding` option(Tatsuo)  
 New `createdb -E multibyte` option(Tatsuo)  
`Select version();` now returns PostgreSQL version(Jeroen)  
`Libpq` now allows asynchronous clients(Tom)  
 Allow cancel from client of backend query(Tom)  
`Psql` now cancels query with `Control-C`(Tom)  
`Libpq` users need not issue dummy queries to get `NOTIFY` messages(Tom)

NOTIFY now sends sender's PID, so you can tell whether it was your own(Tom)  
PGresult struct now includes associated error message, if any(Tom)  
Define "tz\_hour" and "tz\_minute" arguments to date\_part()(Thomas)  
Add routines to convert between varchar and bpchar(Thomas)  
Add routines to allow sizing of varchar and bpchar into target columns(Thomas)  
Add bit flags to support timezonehour and minute in data retrieval(Thomas)  
Allow more variations on valid floating point numbers (e.g. ".1", "1e6")(Thomas)  
Fixes for unary minus parsing with leading spaces(Thomas)  
Implement TIMEZONE\_HOUR, TIMEZONE\_MINUTE per SQL92 specs(Thomas)  
Check for and properly ignore FOREIGN KEY column constraints(Thomas)  
Define USER as synonym for CURRENT\_USER per SQL92 specs(Thomas)  
Enable HAVING clause but no fixes elsewhere yet.  
Make "char" type a synonym for "char(1)" (actually implemented as bpchar)(Thomas)  
Save string type if specified for DEFAULT clause handling(Thomas)  
Coerce operations involving different data types(Thomas)  
Allow some index use for columns of different types(Thomas)  
Add capabilities for automatic type conversion(Thomas)  
Cleanups for large objects, so file is truncated on open(Peter)  
Readline cleanups(Tom)  
Allow psql \f \ to make spaces as delimiter(Bruce)  
Pass pg\_attribute.atttypmod to the frontend for column field lengths(Tom,Bruce)  
Msql compatibility library in /contrib(Aldrin)  
Remove the requirement that ORDER/GROUP BY clause identifiers be included in the target list(David)  
Convert columns to match columns in UNION clauses(Thomas)  
Remove fork()/exec() and only do fork()(Bruce)  
Jdbc cleanups(Peter)  
Show backend status on ps command line(only works on some platforms)(Bruce)  
Pg\_hba.conf now has a sameuser option in the database field  
Make lo\_unlink take oid param, not int4  
New DISABLE\_COMPLEX\_MACRO for compilers that can't handle our macros(Bruce)  
Libpgtcl now handles NOTIFY as a Tcl event, need not send dummy queries(Tom)  
libpgtcl cleanups(Tom)  
Add -error option to libpgtcl's pg\_result command(Tom)  
New locale patch, see docs/README/locale(Oleg)  
Fix for pg\_dump so CONSTRAINT and CHECK syntax is correct(ccb)  
New contrib/lo code for large object orphan removal(Peter)  
New psql command "SET CLIENT\_ENCODING TO 'encoding'" for multibytes feature, see /doc/README.mb(Tatsuo)  
/contrib/noupdate code to revoke update permission on a column  
Libpq can now be compiled on win32(Magnus)  
Add PQsetdbLogin() in libpq  
New 8-byte integer type, checked by configure for OS support(Thomas)  
Better support for quoted table/column names(Thomas)  
Surround table and column names with double-quotes in pg\_dump(Thomas)  
PQreset() now works with passwords(Tom)  
Handle case of GROUP BY target list column number out of range(David)  
Allow UNION in subselects  
Add auto-size to screen to \d? commands(Bruce)  
Use UNION to show all \d? results in one query(Bruce)  
Add \d? field search feature(Bruce)  
Pg\_dump issues fewer \connect requests(Tom)  
Make pg\_dump -z flag work better, document it in manual page(Tom)

Add HAVING clause with full support for subselects and unions(Stephan)  
Full text indexing routines in contrib/fulltextindex(Maarten)  
Transaction ids now stored in shared memory(Vadim)  
New PGCLIENTENCODING when issuing COPY command(Tatsuo)  
Support for SQL92 syntax "SET NAMES"(Tatsuo)  
Support for LATIN2-5(Tatsuo)  
Add UNICODE regression test case(Tatsuo)  
Lock manager cleanup, new locking modes for LLL(Vadim)  
Allow index use with OR clauses(Bruce)  
Allows "SELECT NULL ORDER BY 1;"  
Explain VERBOSE prints the plan, and now pretty-prints the plan to  
the postmaster log file(Bruce)  
Add indexes display to \d command(Bruce)  
Allow GROUP BY on functions(David)  
New pg\_class.relkind for large objects(Bruce)  
New way to send libpq NOTICE messages to a different location(Tom)  
New \w write command to psql(Bruce)  
New /contrib/findoidjoins scans oid columns to find join relationships(Bruce)  
Allow binary-compatible indexes to be considered when checking for valid  
Indexes for restriction clauses containing a constant(Thomas)  
New ISBN/ISSN code in /contrib/isbn\_issn  
Allow NOT LIKE, IN, NOT IN, BETWEEN, and NOT BETWEEN constraint(Thomas)  
New rewrite system fixes many problems with rules and views(Jan)  
\* Rules on relations work  
\* Event qualifications on insert/update/delete work  
\* New OLD variable to reference CURRENT, CURRENT will be remove in future  
\* Update rules can reference NEW and OLD in rule qualifications/actions  
\* Insert/update/delete rules on views work  
\* Multiple rule actions are now supported, surrounded by parentheses  
\* Regular users can create views/rules on tables they have RULE permits  
\* Rules and views inherit the permissions on the creator  
\* No rules at the column level  
\* No UPDATE NEW/OLD rules  
\* New pg\_tables, pg\_indexes, pg\_rules and pg\_views system views  
\* Only a single action on SELECT rules  
\* Total rewrite overhaul, perhaps for 6.5  
\* handle subselects  
\* handle aggregates on views  
\* handle insert into select from view works  
System indexes are now multikey(Bruce)  
Oidint2, oidint4, and oidname types are removed(Bruce)  
Use system cache for more system table lookups(Bruce)  
New backend programming language PL/pgSQL in backend/pl(Jan)  
New SERIAL data type, auto-creates sequence/index(Thomas)  
Enable assert checking without a recompile(Massimo)  
User lock enhancements(Massimo)  
New setval() command to set sequence value(Massimo)  
Auto-remove unix socket file on start-up if no postmaster running(Massimo)  
Conditional trace package(Massimo)  
New UNLISTEN command(Massimo)  
Psql and libpq now compile under win32 using win32.mak(Magnus)  
Lo\_read no longer stores trailing NULL(Bruce)  
Identifiers are now truncated to 31 characters internally(Bruce)

Createuser options now available on the command line  
Code for 64-bit integer supported added, configure tested, int8 type(Thomas)  
Prevent file descriptor leak from failed COPY(Bruce)  
New pg\_upgrade command(Bruce)  
Updated /contrib directories(Massimo)  
New CREATE TABLE DEFAULT VALUES statement available(Thomas)  
New INSERT INTO TABLE DEFAULT VALUES statement available(Thomas)  
New DECLARE and FETCH feature(Thomas)  
libpq's internal structures now not exported(Tom)  
Allow up to 8 key indexes(Bruce)  
Remove ARCHIVE keyword, that is no longer used(Thomas)  
pg\_dump -n flag to suppress quotes around identifiers  
disable system columns for views(Jan)  
new INET and CIDR types for network addresses(TomH, Paul)  
no more double quotes in psql output  
pg\_dump now dumps views(Terry)  
new SET QUERY\_LIMIT(Tatsuo,Jan)

#### Source Tree Changes

-----  
/contrib cleanup(Jun)  
Inline some small functions called for every row(Bruce)  
Alpha/linux fixes  
HP-UX cleanups(Tom)  
Multibyte regression tests(Soonmyung.)  
Remove --disabled options from configure  
Define PGDOC to use POSTGRES DIR by default  
Make regression optional  
Remove extra braces code to pgindent(Bruce)  
Add bsd shared library support(Bruce)  
New --without-CXX support configure option(Brook)  
New FAQ\_CVS  
Update backend flowchart in tools/backend(Bruce)  
Change attypmod from int16 to int32(Bruce, Tom)  
Getusage() fix for platforms that do not have it(Tom)  
Add PQconnectdb, PGUSER, PGPASSWORD to libpq man page  
NS32K platform fixes(Phil Nelson, John Buller)  
SCO 7/UnixWare 2.x fixes(Billy,others)  
Sparc/Solaris 2.5 fixes(Ryan)  
Pgbuiltin.3 is obsolete, move to doc files(Thomas)  
Even more documentation(Thomas)  
Nextstep support(Jacek)  
Aix support(David)  
pginterface manual page(Bruce)  
shared libraries all have version numbers  
merged all OS-specific shared library defines into one file  
smarter TCL/TK configuration checking(Billy)  
smarter perl configuration(Brook)  
configure uses supplied install-sh if no install script found(Tom)  
new Makefile.shlib for shared library configuration(Tom)

## A.24. Release 6.3.2

**Release date:** 1998-04-07

This is a bug-fix release for 6.3.x. Refer to the release notes for version 6.3 for a more complete summary of new features.

Summary:

- Repairs automatic configuration support for some platforms, including Linux, from breakage inadvertently introduced in version 6.3.1.
- Correctly handles function calls on the left side of BETWEEN and LIKE clauses.

A dump/restore is NOT required for those running 6.3 or 6.3.1. A `make distclean`, `make`, and `make install` is all that is required. This last step should be performed while the postmaster is not running. You should re-link any custom applications that use PostgreSQL libraries.

For upgrades from pre-6.3 installations, refer to the installation and migration instructions for version 6.3.

### A.24.1. Changes

```

Configure detection improvements for tcl/tk(Brook Milligan, Alvin)
Manual page improvements(Bruce)
BETWEEN and LIKE fix(Thomas)
fix for psql \connect used by pg_dump(Oliver Elphick)
New odbc driver
pgaccess, version 0.86
qsort removed, now uses libc version, cleanups(Jeroen)
fix for buffer over-runs detected(Maurice Gittens)
fix for buffer overrun in libpgtcl(Randy Kunkee)
fix for UNION with DISTINCT or ORDER BY(Bruce)
gettimeofday configure check(Doug Winterburn)
Fix "indexes not used" bug(Vadim)
docs additions(Thomas)
Fix for backend memory leak(Bruce)
libreadline cleanup(Erwan MAS)
Remove DISTDIR(Bruce)
Makefile dependency cleanup(Jeroen van Vianen)
ASSERT fixes(Bruce)

```

## A.25. Release 6.3.1

**Release date:** 1998-03-23

Summary:

- Additional support for multibyte character sets.
- Repair byte ordering for mixed-endian clients and servers.
- Minor updates to allowed SQL syntax.
- Improvements to the configuration autodetection for installation.

A dump/restore is NOT required for those running 6.3. A `make distclean`, `make`, and `make install` is all that is required. This last step should be performed while the postmaster is not running. You should re-link any custom applications that use PostgreSQL libraries.

For upgrades from pre-6.3 installations, refer to the installation and migration instructions for version 6.3.

### A.25.1. Changes

```

ecpg cleanup/fixes, now version 1.1(Michael Meskes)
pg_user cleanup(Bruce)
large object fix for pg_dump and tclsh (alvin)
LIKE fix for multiple adjacent underscores
fix for redefining builtin functions(Thomas)
ultrix4 cleanup
upgrade to pg_access 0.83
updated CLUSTER manual page
multibyte character set support, see doc/README.mb(Tatsuo)
configure --with-pgport fix
pg_ident fix
big-endian fix for backend communications(Kataoka)
SUBSTR() and substring() fix(Jan)
several jdbc fixes(Peter)
libpgtcl improvements, see libptcl/README(Randy Kunkee)
Fix for "Datasize = 0" error(Vadim)
Prevent \do from wrapping(Bruce)
Remove duplicate Russian character set entries
Sunos4 cleanup
Allow optional TABLE keyword in LOCK and SELECT INTO(Thomas)
CREATE SEQUENCE options to allow a negative integer(Thomas)
Add "PASSWORD" as an allowed column identifier(Thomas)
Add checks for UNION target fields(Bruce)
Fix Alpha port(Dwayne Bailey)
Fix for text arrays containing quotes(Doug Gibson)
Solaris compile fix(Albert Chin-A-Young)
Better identify tcl and tk libs and includes(Bruce)

```

## A.26. Release 6.3

**Release date:** 1998-03-01

There are *many* new features and improvements in this release. Here is a brief, incomplete summary:

- Many new SQL features, including full SQL92 subselect capability (everything is here but target-list subselects).
- Support for client-side environment variables to specify time zone and date style.
- Socket interface for client/server connection. This is the default now so you may need to start postmaster with the `-i` flag.
- Better password authorization mechanisms. Default table permissions have changed.
- Old-style *time travel* has been removed. Performance has been improved.

**Note:** Bruce Momjian wrote the following notes to introduce the new release.

There are some general 6.3 issues that I want to mention. These are only the big items that can not be described in one sentence. A review of the detailed changes list is still needed.

First, we now have subselects. Now that we have them, I would like to mention that without subselects, SQL is a very limited language. Subselects are a major feature, and you should review your code for places where subselects provide a better solution for your queries. I think you will find that there are more uses for subselects than you may think. Vadim has put us on the big SQL map with subselects, and fully functional ones too. The only thing you can't do with subselects is to use them in the target list.

Second, 6.3 uses Unix domain sockets rather than TCP/IP by default. To enable connections from other machines, you have to use the new postmaster `-i` option, and of course edit `pg_hba.conf`. Also, for this reason, the format of `pg_hba.conf` has changed.

Third, `char()` fields will now allow faster access than `varchar()` or `text`. Specifically, the `text` and `varchar()` have a penalty for access to any columns after the first column of this type. `char()` used to also have this access penalty, but it no longer does. This may suggest that you redesign some of your tables, especially if you have short character columns that you have defined as `varchar()` or `text`. This and other changes make 6.3 even faster than earlier releases.

We now have passwords definable independent of any Unix file. There are new SQL `USER` commands. See the *Administrator's Guide* for more information. There is a new table, `pg_shadow`, which is used to store user information and user passwords, and it by default only `SELECT`-able by the postgres super-user.

`pg_user` is now a view of `pg_shadow`, and is `SELECT`-able by `PUBLIC`. You should keep using `pg_user` in your application without changes.

User-created tables now no longer have `SELECT` permission to `PUBLIC` by default. This was done because the ANSI standard requires it. You can of course `GRANT` any permissions you want after the table is created. System tables continue to be `SELECT`-able by `PUBLIC`.

We also have real deadlock detection code. No more sixty-second timeouts. And the new locking code implements a FIFO better, so there should be less resource starvation during heavy use.

Many complaints have been made about inadequate documentation in previous releases. Thomas has put much effort into many new manuals for this release. Check out the `doc/` directory.

For performance reasons, time travel is gone, but can be implemented using triggers (see `pgsql/contrib/spi/README`). Please check out the new `\d` command for types, operators, etc. Also, views have their own permissions now, not based on the underlying tables, so permissions on them have to be set separately. Check `/pgsql/interfaces` for some new ways to talk to PostgreSQL.

This is the first release that really required an explanation for existing users. In many ways, this was necessary because the new release removes many limitations, and the work-arounds people were using are no longer needed.

### A.26.1. Migration to version 6.3

A dump/restore using `pg_dump` or `pg_dumpall` is required for those wishing to migrate data from any previous release of PostgreSQL.

### A.26.2. Changes

#### Bug Fixes

-----

```
Fix binary cursors broken by MOVE implementation(Vadim)
Fix for tcl library crash(Jan)
Fix for array handling, from Gerhard Hintermayer
Fix acl error, and remove duplicate pqtrace(Bruce)
Fix psql \e for empty file(Bruce)
Fix for textcat on varchar() fields(Bruce)
Fix for DBT Sendproc (Zeugswetter Andres)
Fix vacuum analyze syntax problem(Bruce)
Fix for international identifiers(Tatsuo)
Fix aggregates on inherited tables(Bruce)
Fix substr() for out-of-bounds data
Fix for select 1=1 or 2=2, select 1=1 and 2=2, and select sum(2+2)(Bruce)
Fix notty output to show status result. -q option still turns it off(Bruce)
Fix for count(*), aggs with views and multiple tables and sum(3)(Bruce)
Fix cluster(Bruce)
Fix for PQtrace start/stop several times(Bruce)
Fix a variety of locking problems like newer lock waiters getting
  lock before older waiters, and having readlock people not share
  locks if a writer is waiting for a lock, and waiting writers not
  getting priority over waiting readers(Bruce)
Fix crashes in psql when executing queries from external files(James)
```

Fix problem with multiple order by columns, with the first one having NULL values(Jeroen)  
 Use correct hash table support functions for float8 and int4(Thomas)  
 Re-enable JOIN= option in CREATE OPERATOR statement (Thomas)  
 Change precedence for boolean operators to match expected behavior(Thomas)  
 Generate elog(ERROR) on over-large integer(Bruce)  
 Allow multiple-argument functions in constraint clauses(Thomas)  
 Check boolean input literals for 'true','false','yes','no','1','0' and throw elog(ERROR) if unrecognized(Thomas)  
 Major large objects fix  
 Fix for GROUP BY showing duplicates(Vadim)  
 Fix for index scans in MergeJoin(Vadim)

#### Enhancements

-----

Subselects with EXISTS, IN, ALL, ANY keywords (Vadim, Bruce, Thomas)  
 New User Manual(Thomas, others)  
 Speedup by inlining some frequently-called functions  
 Real deadlock detection, no more timeouts(Bruce)  
 Add SQL92 "constants" CURRENT\_DATE, CURRENT\_TIME, CURRENT\_TIMESTAMP, CURRENT\_USER(Thomas)  
 Modify constraint syntax to be SQL92-compliant(Thomas)  
 Implement SQL92 PRIMARY KEY and UNIQUE clauses using indexes(Thomas)  
 Recognize SQL92 syntax for FOREIGN KEY. Throw elog notice(Thomas)  
 Allow NOT NULL UNIQUE constraint clause (each allowed separately before)(Thomas)  
 Allow PostgreSQL-style casting ( "::") of non-constants(Thomas)  
 Add support for SQL3 TRUE and FALSE boolean constants(Thomas)  
 Support SQL92 syntax for IS TRUE/IS FALSE/IS NOT TRUE/IS NOT FALSE(Thomas)  
 Allow shorter strings for boolean literals (e.g. "t", "tr", "tru")(Thomas)  
 Allow SQL92 delimited identifiers(Thomas)  
 Implement SQL92 binary and hexadecimal string decoding (b'10' and x'1F')(Thomas)  
 Support SQL92 syntax for type coercion of literal strings (e.g. "DATETIME 'now'")(Thomas)  
 Add conversions for int2, int4, and OID types to and from text(Thomas)  
 Use shared lock when building indexes(Vadim)  
 Free memory allocated for an user query inside transaction block after this query is done, was turned off in <= 6.2.1(Vadim)  
 New SQL statement CREATE PROCEDURAL LANGUAGE(Jan)  
 New PostgreSQL Procedural Language (PL) backend interface(Jan)  
 Rename pg\_dump -H option to -h(Bruce)  
 Add Java support for passwords, European dates(Peter)  
 Use indexes for LIKE and ~, !~ operations(Bruce)  
 Add hash functions for datetime and timespan(Thomas)  
 Time Travel removed(Vadim, Bruce)  
 Add paging for \d and \z, and fix \i(Bruce)  
 Add Unix domain socket support to backend and to frontend library(Goran)  
 Implement CREATE DATABASE/WITH LOCATION and initlocation utility(Thomas)  
 Allow more SQL92 and/or PostgreSQL reserved words as column identifiers(Thomas)  
 Augment support for SQL92 SET TIME ZONE...(Thomas)  
 SET/SHOW/RESET TIME ZONE uses TZ backend environment variable(Thomas)  
 Implement SET keyword = DEFAULT and SET TIME ZONE DEFAULT(Thomas)  
 Enable SET TIME ZONE using TZ environment variable(Thomas)  
 Add PGDATESTYLE environment variable to frontend and backend initialization(Thomas)

Add PGTZ, PGCOSTHEAP, PGCOSTINDEX, PGRPLANS, PGGEQO  
frontend library initialization environment variables(Thomas)  
Regression tests time zone automatically set with "setenv PGTZ PST8PDT"(Thomas)  
Add pg\_description table for info on tables, columns, operators, types, and  
aggregates(Bruce)  
Increase 16 char limit on system table/index names to 32 characters(Bruce)  
Rename system indexes(Bruce)  
Add 'GERMAN' option to SET DATESTYLE(Thomas)  
Define an "ISO-style" timespan output format with "hh:mm:ss" fields(Thomas)  
Allow fractional values for delta times (e.g. '2.5 days')(Thomas)  
Validate numeric input more carefully for delta times(Thomas)  
Implement day of year as possible input to date\_part()(Thomas)  
Define timespan\_finite() and text\_timespan() functions(Thomas)  
Remove archive stuff(Bruce)  
Allow for a pg\_password authentication database that is separate from  
the system password file(Todd)  
Dump ACLs, GRANT, REVOKE permissions(Matt)  
Define text, varchar, and bpchar string length functions(Thomas)  
Fix Query handling for inheritance, and cost computations(Bruce)  
Implement CREATE TABLE/AS SELECT (alternative to SELECT/INTO)(Thomas)  
Allow NOT, IS NULL, IS NOT NULL in constraints(Thomas)  
Implement UNIONs for SELECT(Bruce)  
Add UNION, GROUP, DISTINCT to INSERT(Bruce)  
varchar() stores only necessary bytes on disk(Bruce)  
Fix for BLOBs(Peter)  
Mega-Patch for JDBC...see README\_6.3 for list of changes(Peter)  
Remove unused "option" from PQconnectdb()  
New LOCK command and lock manual page describing deadlocks(Bruce)  
Add new psql \da, \dd, \df, \do, \dS, and \dT commands(Bruce)  
Enhance psql \z to show sequences(Bruce)  
Show NOT NULL and DEFAULT in psql \d table(Bruce)  
New psql .psqlrc file start-up(Andrew)  
Modify sample start-up script in contrib/linux to show syslog(Thomas)  
New types for IP and MAC addresses in contrib/ip\_and\_mac(TomH)  
Unix system time conversions with date/time types in contrib/unixdate(Thomas)  
Update of contrib stuff(Massimo)  
Add Unix socket support to DBD::Pg(Goran)  
New python interface (PyGreSQL 2.0)(D'Arcy)  
New frontend/backend protocol has a version number, network byte order(Phil)  
Security features in pg\_hba.conf enhanced and documented, many cleanups(Phil)  
CHAR() now faster access than VARCHAR() or TEXT  
ecpg embedded SQL preprocessor  
Reduce system column overhead(Vadmin)  
Remove pg\_time table(Vadim)  
Add pg\_type attribute to identify types that need length (bpchar, varchar)  
Add report of offending line when COPY command fails  
Allow VIEW permissions to be set separately from the underlying tables.  
For security, use GRANT/REVOKE on views as appropriate(Jan)  
Tables now have no default GRANT SELECT TO PUBLIC. You must  
explicitly grant such permissions.  
Clean up tutorial examples(Darren)

Source Tree Changes

-----  
Add new html development tools, and flow chart in /tools/backend  
Fix for SCO compiles  
Stratus computer port Robert Gillies  
Added support for shlib for BSD44\_derived & i386\_solaris  
Make configure more automated(Brook)  
Add script to check regression test results  
Break parser functions into smaller files, group together(Bruce)  
Rename heap\_create to heap\_create\_and\_catalog, rename heap\_creatr  
to heap\_create()(Bruce)  
Sparc/Linux patch for locking(TomS)  
Remove PORTNAME and reorganize port-specific stuff(Marc)  
Add optimizer README file(Bruce)  
Remove some recursion in optimizer and clean up some code there(Bruce)  
Fix for NetBSD locking(Henry)  
Fix for libptcl make(Tatsuo)  
AIX patch(Darren)  
Change IS TRUE, IS FALSE, ... to expressions using "=" rather than  
function calls to istrue() or isfalse() to allow optimization(Thomas)  
Various fixes NetBSD/Sparc related(TomH)  
Alpha linux locking(Travis,Ryan)  
Change elog(WARN) to elog(ERROR)(Bruce)  
FAQ for FreeBSD(Marc)  
Bring in the PostODBC source tree as part of our standard distribution(Marc)  
A minor patch for HP/UX 10 vs 9(Stan)  
New pg\_attribute.atttypmod for type-specific info like varchar length(Bruce)  
UnixWare patches(Billy)  
New i386 'lock' for spin lock asm(Billy)  
Support for multiplexed backends is removed  
Start an OpenBSD port  
Start an AUX port  
Start a Cygnus port  
Add string functions to regression suite(Thomas)  
Expand a few function names formerly truncated to 16 characters(Thomas)  
Remove un-needed malloc() calls and replace with palloc()(Bruce)

## A.27. Release 6.2.1

**Release date:** 1997-10-17

6.2.1 is a bug-fix and usability release on 6.2.

Summary:

- Allow strings to span lines, per SQL92.
- Include example trigger function for inserting user names on table updates.

This is a minor bug-fix release on 6.2. For upgrades from pre-6.2 systems, a full dump/reload is required. Refer to the 6.2 release notes for instructions.

### A.27.1. Migration from version 6.2 to version 6.2.1

This is a minor bug-fix release. A dump/reload is not required from version 6.2, but is required from any release prior to 6.2.

In upgrading from version 6.2, if you choose to dump/reload you will find that `avg(money)` is now calculated correctly. All other bug fixes take effect upon updating the executables.

Another way to avoid dump/reload is to use the following SQL command from `psql` to update the existing system table:

```
update pg_aggregate set aggfinalfn = 'cash_div_flt8'
where aggrname = 'avg' and aggrbasetype = 790;
```

This will need to be done to every existing database, including `template1`.

### A.27.2. Changes

- Allow TIME and TYPE column names(Thomas)
- Allow larger range of true/false as boolean values(Thomas)
- Support output of "now" and "current"(Thomas)
- Handle DEFAULT with INSERT of NULL properly(Vadim)
- Fix for relation reference counts problem in buffer manager(Vadim)
- Allow strings to span lines, like ANSI(Thomas)
- Fix for backward cursor with ORDER BY(Vadim)
- Fix `avg(cash)` computation(Thomas)
- Fix for specifying a column twice in ORDER/GROUP BY(Vadim)
- Documented new `libpq` function to return affected rows, `PQcmdTuples`(Bruce)
- Trigger function for inserting user names for INSERT/UPDATE(Brook Milligan)

## A.28. Release 6.2

**Release date:** 1997-10-02

A dump/restore is required for those wishing to migrate data from previous releases of PostgreSQL.

### A.28.1. Migration from version 6.1 to version 6.2

This migration requires a complete dump of the 6.1 database and a restore of the database in 6.2.

Note that the `pg_dump` and `pg_dumpall` utility from 6.2 should be used to dump the 6.1 database.

### A.28.2. Migration from version 1.x to version 6.2

Those migrating from earlier 1.\* releases should first upgrade to 1.09 because the COPY output format was improved from the 1.02 release.

### A.28.3. Changes

#### Bug Fixes

-----

Fix problems with `pg_dump` for inheritance, sequences, archive tables(Bruce)  
 Fix compile errors on overflow due to shifts, unsigned, and bad prototypes  
 from Solaris(Diab Jerius)  
 Fix bugs in geometric line arithmetic (bad intersection calculations)(Thomas)  
 Check for geometric intersections at endpoints to avoid rounding ugliness(Thomas)  
 Catch non-functional delete attempts(Vadim)  
 Change time function names to be more consistent(Michael Reifenberg)  
 Check for zero divides(Michael Reifenberg)  
 Fix very old bug which made tuples changed/inserted by a command  
 visible to the command itself (so we had multiple update of  
 updated tuples, etc)(Vadim)  
 Fix for SELECT null, 'fail' FROM pg\_am (Patrick)  
 SELECT NULL as EMPTY\_FIELD now allowed(Patrick)  
 Remove un-needed signal stuff from contrib/pginterface  
 Fix OR (where x != 1 or x isnull didn't return tuples with x NULL) (Vadim)  
 Fix time\_cmp function (Vadim)  
 Fix handling of functions with non-attribute first argument in  
 WHERE clauses (Vadim)  
 Fix GROUP BY when order of entries is different from order  
 in target list (Vadim)  
 Fix pg\_dump for aggregates without sfuncl (Vadim)

#### Enhancements

-----

Default genetic optimizer GEQO parameter is now 8(Bruce)  
 Allow use parameters in target list having aggregates in functions(Vadim)  
 Added JDBC driver as an interface(Adrian & Peter)  
 pg\_password utility  
 Return number of tuples inserted/affected by INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE etc.(Vadim)  
 Triggers implemented with CREATE TRIGGER (SQL3)(Vadim)  
 SPI (Server Programming Interface) allows execution of queries inside  
 C-functions (Vadim)  
 NOT NULL implemented (SQL92)(Robson Paniago de Miranda)  
 Include reserved words for string handling, outer joins, and unions(Thomas)  
 Implement extended comments ("/\* ... \*/") using exclusive states(Thomas)  
 Add "/\*" single-line comments(Bruce)

Remove some restrictions on characters in operator names(Thomas)  
 DEFAULT and CONSTRAINT for tables implemented (SQL92)(Vadim & Thomas)  
 Add text concatenation operator and function (SQL92)(Thomas)  
 Support WITH TIME ZONE syntax (SQL92)(Thomas)  
 Support INTERVAL unit TO unit syntax (SQL92)(Thomas)  
 Define types DOUBLE PRECISION, INTERVAL, CHARACTER,  
 and CHARACTER VARYING (SQL92)(Thomas)  
 Define type FLOAT(p) and rudimentary DECIMAL(p,s), NUMERIC(p,s) (SQL92)(Thomas)  
 Define EXTRACT(), POSITION(), SUBSTRING(), and TRIM() (SQL92)(Thomas)  
 Define CURRENT\_DATE, CURRENT\_TIME, CURRENT\_TIMESTAMP (SQL92)(Thomas)  
 Add syntax and warnings for UNION, HAVING, INNER and OUTER JOIN (SQL92)(Thomas)  
 Add more reserved words, mostly for SQL92 compliance(Thomas)  
 Allow hh:mm:ss time entry for timespan/reftime types(Thomas)  
 Add center() routines for lseg, path, polygon(Thomas)  
 Add distance() routines for circle-polygon, polygon-polygon(Thomas)  
 Check explicitly for points and polygons contained within polygons  
 using an axis-crossing algorithm(Thomas)  
 Add routine to convert circle-box(Thomas)  
 Merge conflicting operators for different geometric data types(Thomas)  
 Replace distance operator "<==>" with "<->"(Thomas)  
 Replace "above" operator "!^" with ">^" and "below" operator "!" with "<^(Thomas)  
 Add routines for text trimming on both ends, substring, and string position(Thomas)  
 Added conversion routines circle(box) and poly(circle)(Thomas)  
 Allow internal sorts to be stored in memory rather than in files(Bruce & Vadim)  
 Allow functions and operators on internally-identical types to succeed(Bruce)  
 Speed up backend start-up after profiling analysis(Bruce)  
 Inline frequently called functions for performance(Bruce)  
 Reduce open() calls(Bruce)  
 psql: Add PAGER for \h and \?,\C fix  
 Fix for psql pager when no tty(Bruce)  
 New entab utility(Bruce)  
 General trigger functions for referential integrity (Vadim)  
 General trigger functions for time travel (Vadim)  
 General trigger functions for AUTOINCREMENT/IDENTITY feature (Vadim)  
 MOVE implementation (Vadim)

#### Source Tree Changes

-----

HP-UX 10 patches (Vladimir Turin)  
 Added SCO support, (Daniel Harris)  
 MkLinux patches (Tatsuo Ishii)  
 Change geometric box terminology from "length" to "width"(Thomas)  
 Deprecate temporary unstored slope fields in geometric code(Thomas)  
 Remove restart instructions from INSTALL(Bruce)  
 Look in /usr/ucb first for install(Bruce)  
 Fix c++ copy example code(Thomas)  
 Add -o to psql manual page(Bruce)  
 Prevent relname unallocated string length from being copied into database(Bruce)  
 Cleanup for NAMEDATALEN use(Bruce)  
 Fix pg\_proc names over 15 chars in output(Bruce)  
 Add strNcpy() function(Bruce)  
 remove some (void) casts that are unnecessary(Bruce)  
 new interfaces directory(Marc)

Replace fopen() calls with calls to fd.c functions(Bruce)  
Make functions static where possible(Bruce)  
enclose unused functions in #ifdef NOT\_USED(Bruce)  
Remove call to difftime() in timestamp support to fix SunOS(Bruce & Thomas)  
Changes for Digital Unix  
Portability fix for pg\_dumpall(Bruce)  
Rename pg\_attribute.attnvals to attdispersion(Bruce)  
"intro/unix" manual page now "pgintro"(Bruce)  
"built-in" manual page now "pgbuiltin"(Bruce)  
"drop" manual page now "drop\_table"(Bruce)  
Add "create\_trigger", "drop\_trigger" manual pages(Thomas)  
Add constraints regression test(Vadim & Thomas)  
Add comments syntax regression test(Thomas)  
Add PGINDENT and support program(Bruce)  
Massive commit to run PGINDENT on all \*.c and \*.h files(Bruce)  
Files moved to /src/tools directory(Bruce)  
SPI and Trigger programming guides (Vadim & D'Arcy)

## A.29. Release 6.1.1

**Release date:** 1997-07-22

### A.29.1. Migration from version 6.1 to version 6.1.1

This is a minor bug-fix release. A dump/reload is not required from version 6.1, but is required from any release prior to 6.1. Refer to the release notes for 6.1 for more details.

### A.29.2. Changes

fix for SET with options (Thomas)  
allow pg\_dump/pg\_dumpall to preserve ownership of all tables/objects(Bruce)  
new psql \connect option allows changing usernames without changing databases  
fix for initdb --debug option(Yoshihiko Ichikawa)  
lextest cleanup(Bruce)  
hash fixes(Vadim)  
fix date/time month boundary arithmetic(Thomas)  
fix timezone daylight handling for some ports(Thomas, Bruce, Tatsuo)  
timestamp overhauled to use standard functions(Thomas)  
other code cleanup in date/time routines(Thomas)  
psql's \d now case-insensitive(Bruce)  
psql's backslash commands can now have trailing semicolon(Bruce)  
fix memory leak in psql when using \g(Bruce)  
major fix for endian handling of communication to server(Thomas, Tatsuo)  
Fix for Solaris assembler and include files(Yoshihiko Ichikawa)

```
allow underscores in usernames(Bruce)
pg_dumpall now returns proper status, portability fix(Bruce)
```

## A.30. Release 6.1

**Release date:** 1997-06-08

The regression tests have been adapted and extensively modified for the 6.1 release of PostgreSQL.

Three new data types (`datetime`, `timespan`, and `circle`) have been added to the native set of PostgreSQL types. Points, boxes, paths, and polygons have had their output formats made consistent across the data types. The polygon output in `misc.out` has only been spot-checked for correctness relative to the original regression output.

PostgreSQL 6.1 introduces a new, alternate optimizer which uses *genetic* algorithms. These algorithms introduce a random behavior in the ordering of query results when the query contains multiple qualifiers or multiple tables (giving the optimizer a choice on order of evaluation). Several regression tests have been modified to explicitly order the results, and hence are insensitive to optimizer choices. A few regression tests are for data types which are inherently unordered (e.g. points and time intervals) and tests involving those types are explicitly bracketed with `set geqo to 'off'` and `reset geqo`.

The interpretation of array specifiers (the curly braces around atomic values) appears to have changed sometime after the original regression tests were generated. The current `./expected/*.out` files reflect this new interpretation, which may not be correct!

The float8 regression test fails on at least some platforms. This is due to differences in implementations of `pow()` and `exp()` and the signaling mechanisms used for overflow and underflow conditions.

The “random” results in the random test should cause the “random” test to be “failed”, since the regression tests are evaluated using a simple diff. However, “random” does not seem to produce random results on my test machine (Linux/gcc/i686).

### A.30.1. Migration to version 6.1

This migration requires a complete dump of the 6.0 database and a restore of the database in 6.1.

Those migrating from earlier 1.\* releases should first upgrade to 1.09 because the COPY output format was improved from the 1.02 release.

### A.30.2. Changes

```
Bug Fixes
-----
packet length checking in library routines
```

lock manager priority patch  
 check for under/over flow of float8(Bruce)  
 multitable join fix(Vadim)  
 SIGPIPE crash fix(Darren)  
 large object fixes(Sven)  
 allow btree indexes to handle NULLs(Vadim)  
 timezone fixes(D'Arcy)  
 select SUM(x) can return NULL on no rows(Thomas)  
 internal optimizer, executor bug fixes(Vadim)  
 fix problem where inner loop in < or <= has no rows(Vadim)  
 prevent re-commuting join index clauses(Vadim)  
 fix join clauses for multiple tables(Vadim)  
 fix hash, hashjoin for arrays(Vadim)  
 fix btree for abstime type(Vadim)  
 large object fixes(Raymond)  
 fix buffer leak in hash indexes (Vadim)  
 fix rtree for use in inner scan (Vadim)  
 fix gist for use in inner scan, cleanups (Vadim, Andrea)  
 avoid unnecessary local buffers allocation (Vadim, Massimo)  
 fix local buffers leak in transaction aborts (Vadim)  
 fix file manager memory leaks, cleanups (Vadim, Massimo)  
 fix storage manager memory leaks (Vadim)  
 fix btree duplicates handling (Vadim)  
 fix deleted tuples re-incarnation caused by vacuum (Vadim)  
 fix SELECT varchar()/char() INTO TABLE made zero-length fields(Bruce)  
 many psql, pg\_dump, and libpq memory leaks fixed using Purify (Igor)

#### Enhancements

-----

attribute optimization statistics(Bruce)  
 much faster new btree bulk load code(Paul)  
 BTREE UNIQUE added to bulk load code(Vadim)  
 new lock debug code(Massimo)  
 massive changes to libpq++(Leo)  
 new GEQO optimizer speeds table multitable optimization(Martin)  
 new WARN message for non-unique insert into unique key(Marc)  
 update x=-3, no spaces, now valid(Bruce)  
 remove case-sensitive identifier handling(Bruce,Thomas,Dan)  
 debug backend now pretty-prints tree(Darren)  
 new Oracle character functions(Edmund)  
 new plaintext password functions(Dan)  
 no such class or insufficient privilege changed to distinct messages(Dan)  
 new ANSI timestamp function(Dan)  
 new ANSI Time and Date types (Thomas)  
 move large chunks of data in backend(Martin)  
 multicolumn btree indexes(Vadim)  
 new SET var TO value command(Martin)  
 update transaction status on reads(Dan)  
 new locale settings for character types(Oleg)  
 new SEQUENCE serial number generator(Vadim)  
 GROUP BY function now possible(Vadim)  
 re-organize regression test(Thomas,Marc)  
 new optimizer operation weights(Vadim)

new psql \z grant/permit option(Marc)  
new MONEY data type(D'Arcy,Thomas)  
tcp socket communication speed improved(Vadim)  
new VACUUM option for attribute statistics, and for certain columns (Vadim)  
many geometric type improvements(Thomas,Keith)  
additional regression tests(Thomas)  
new datestyle variable(Thomas,Vadim,Martin)  
more comparison operators for sorting types(Thomas)  
new conversion functions(Thomas)  
new more compact btree format(Vadim)  
allow pg\_dumpall to preserve database ownership(Bruce)  
new SET GEQO=# and R\_PLANS variable(Vadim)  
old (!GEQO) optimizer can use right-sided plans (Vadim)  
typechecking improvement in SQL parser(Bruce)  
new SET, SHOW, RESET commands(Thomas,Vadim)  
new \connect database USER option  
new destroydb -i option (Igor)  
new \dt and \di psql commands (Darren)  
SELECT "\n" now escapes newline (A. Duursma)  
new geometry conversion functions from old format (Thomas)

Source tree changes

-----  
new configuration script(Marc)  
readline configuration option added(Marc)  
OS-specific configuration options removed(Marc)  
new OS-specific template files(Marc)  
no more need to edit Makefile.global(Marc)  
re-arrange include files(Marc)  
nextstep patches (Gregor HOFFLEIT)  
removed WIN32-specific code(Bruce)  
removed postmaster -e option, now only postgres -e option (Bruce)  
merge duplicate library code in front/backends(Martin)  
now works with eBones, international Kerberos(Jun)  
more shared library support  
c++ include file cleanup(Bruce)  
warn about buggy flex(Bruce)  
DG/UX, Ultrix, IRIX, AIX portability fixes

## A.31. Release 6.0

**Release date:** 1997-01-29

A dump/restore is required for those wishing to migrate data from previous releases of PostgreSQL.

### A.31.1. Migration from version 1.09 to version 6.0

This migration requires a complete dump of the 1.09 database and a restore of the database in 6.0.

### A.31.2. Migration from pre-1.09 to version 6.0

Those migrating from earlier 1.\* releases should first upgrade to 1.09 because the COPY output format was improved from the 1.02 release.

### A.31.3. Changes

#### Bug Fixes

-----

ALTER TABLE bug - running postgres process needs to re-read table definition  
 Allow vacuum to be run on one table or entire database(Bruce)  
 Array fixes  
 Fix array over-runs of memory writes(Kurt)  
 Fix elusive btree range/non-range bug(Dan)  
 Fix for hash indexes on some types like time and date  
 Fix for pg\_log size explosion  
 Fix permissions on lo\_export()(Bruce)  
 Fix uninitialized reads of memory(Kurt)  
 Fixed ALTER TABLE ... char(3) bug(Bruce)  
 Fixed a few small memory leaks  
 Fixed EXPLAIN handling of options and changed full\_path option name  
 Fixed output of group acl permissions  
 Memory leaks (hunt and destroy with tools like Purify(Kurt))  
 Minor improvements to rules system  
 NOTIFY fixes  
 New asserts for run-checking  
 Overhauled parser/analyze code to properly report errors and increase speed  
 Pg\_dump -d now handles NULL's properly(Bruce)  
 Prevent SELECT NULL from crashing server (Bruce)  
 Properly report errors when INSERT ... SELECT columns did not match  
 Properly report errors when insert column names were not correct  
 Psql \g filename now works(Bruce)  
 Psql fixed problem with multiple statements on one line with multiple outputs  
 Removed duplicate system OIDs  
 SELECT \* INTO TABLE . GROUP/ORDER BY gives unlink error if table exists(Bruce)  
 Several fixes for queries that crashed the backend  
 Starting quote in insert string errors(Bruce)  
 Submitting an empty query now returns empty status, not just " " query(Bruce)

#### Enhancements

-----

Add EXPLAIN manual page(Bruce)  
 Add UNIQUE index capability(Dan)  
 Add hostname/user level access control rather than just hostname and user  
 Add synonym of != for <>(Bruce)  
 Allow "select oid,\* from table"

Allow BY,ORDER BY to specify columns by number, or by non-alias table.column(Bruce)  
Allow COPY from the frontend(Bryan)  
Allow GROUP BY to use alias column name(Bruce)  
Allow actual compression, not just reuse on the same page(Vadim)  
Allow installation-configuration option to auto-add all local users(Bryan)  
Allow libpq to distinguish between text value " and null(Bruce)  
Allow non-postgres users with createdb privs to destroydb's  
Allow restriction on who can create C functions(Bryan)  
Allow restriction on who can do backend COPY(Bryan)  
Can shrink tables, pg\_time and pg\_log(Vadim & Erich)  
Change debug level 2 to print queries only, changed debug heading layout(Bruce)  
Change default decimal constant representation from float4 to float8(Bruce)  
European date format now set when postmaster is started  
Execute lowercase function names if not found with exact case  
Fixes for aggregate/GROUP processing, allow 'select sum(func(x),sum(x+y) from z'  
Gist now included in the distribution(Marc)  
Ident authentication of local users(Bryan)  
Implement BETWEEN qualifier(Bruce)  
Implement IN qualifier(Bruce)  
Libpq has PQgetisnull()(Bruce)  
Libpq++ improvements  
New options to initdb(Bryan)  
Pg\_dump allow dump of OIDs(Bruce)  
Pg\_dump create indexes after tables are loaded for speed(Bruce)  
Pg\_dumpall dumps all databases, and the user table  
Pginterface additions for NULL values(Bruce)  
Prevent postmaster from being run as root  
Psql \h and \? is now readable(Bruce)  
Psql allow backslashed, semicolons anywhere on the line(Bruce)  
Psql changed command prompt for lines in query or in quotes(Bruce)  
Psql char(3) now displays as (bp)char in \d output(Bruce)  
Psql return code now more accurate(Bryan?)  
Psql updated help syntax(Bruce)  
Re-visit and fix vacuum(Vadim)  
Reduce size of regression diffs, remove timezone name difference(Bruce)  
Remove compile-time parameters to enable binary distributions(Bryan)  
Reverse meaning of HBA masks(Bryan)  
Secure Authentication of local users(Bryan)  
Speed up vacuum(Vadim)  
Vacuum now had VERBOSE option(Bruce)

Source tree changes

-----

All functions now have prototypes that are compared against the calls  
Allow asserts to be disabled easily from Makefile.global(Bruce)  
Change oid constants used in code to #define names  
Decoupled sparc and solaris defines(Kurt)  
Gcc -Wall compiles cleanly with warnings only from unfixable constructs  
Major include file reorganization/reduction(Marc)  
Make now stops on compile failure(Bryan)  
Makefile restructuring(Bryan, Marc)  
Merge bsdi\_2\_1 to bsdi(Bruce)  
Monitor program removed

Name change from Postgres95 to PostgreSQL  
New config.h file(Marc, Bryan)  
PG\_VERSION now set to 6.0 and used by postmaster  
Portability additions, including Ultrix, DG/UX, AIX, and Solaris  
Reduced the number of #define's, centralized #define's  
Remove duplicate OIDS in system tables(Dan)  
Remove duplicate system catalog info or report mismatches(Dan)  
Removed many os-specific #define's  
Restructured object file generation/location(Bryan, Marc)  
Restructured port-specific file locations(Bryan, Marc)  
Unused/uninitialized variables corrected

## A.32. Release 1.09

**Release date:** 1996-11-04

Sorry, we didn't keep track of changes from 1.02 to 1.09. Some of the changes listed in 6.0 were actually included in the 1.02.1 to 1.09 releases.

## A.33. Release 1.02

**Release date:** 1996-08-01

### A.33.1. Migration from version 1.02 to version 1.02.1

Here is a new migration file for 1.02.1. It includes the 'copy' change and a script to convert old ASCII files.

**Note:** The following notes are for the benefit of users who want to migrate databases from Postgres95 1.01 and 1.02 to Postgres95 1.02.1.

If you are starting afresh with Postgres95 1.02.1 and do not need to migrate old databases, you do not need to read any further.

In order to upgrade older Postgres95 version 1.01 or 1.02 databases to version 1.02.1, the following steps are required:

1. Start up a new 1.02.1 postmaster

2. Add the new built-in functions and operators of 1.02.1 to 1.01 or 1.02 databases. This is done by running the new 1.02.1 server against your own 1.01 or 1.02 database and applying the queries attached at the end of the file. This can be done easily through `psql`. If your 1.01 or 1.02 database is named `testdb` and you have cut the commands from the end of this file and saved them in `addfunc.sql`:

```
% psql testdb -f addfunc.sql
```

Those upgrading 1.02 databases will get a warning when executing the last two statements in the file because they are already present in 1.02. This is not a cause for concern.

### A.33.2. Dump/Reload Procedure

If you are trying to reload a `pg_dump` or text-mode, `copy tablename to stdout` generated with a previous version, you will need to run the attached `sed` script on the ASCII file before loading it into the database. The old format used `'` as end-of-data, while `\.` is now the end-of-data marker. Also, empty strings are now loaded in as `''` rather than `NULL`. See the copy manual page for full details.

```
sed 's/^\.$/\./g' <in_file >out_file
```

If you are loading an older binary copy or non-stdout copy, there is no end-of-data character, and hence no conversion necessary.

```
-- following lines added by agc to reflect the case-insensitive
-- regexp searching for varchar (in 1.02), and bpchar (in 1.02.1)
create operator ~* (leftarg = bpchar, rightarg = text, procedure = texticregexeq);
create operator !~* (leftarg = bpchar, rightarg = text, procedure = texticregexne);
create operator ~* (leftarg = varchar, rightarg = text, procedure = texticregexeq);
create operator !~* (leftarg = varchar, rightarg = text, procedure = texti-
cregexne);
```

### A.33.3. Changes

Source code maintenance and development

- \* worldwide team of volunteers
- \* the source tree now in CVS at `ftp.ki.net`

Enhancements

- \* `psql` (and underlying `libpq` library) now has many more options for formatting output, including HTML
- \* `pg_dump` now output the schema and/or the data, with many fixes to enhance completeness.
- \* `psql` used in place of `monitor` in administration shell scripts. `monitor` to be deprecated in next release.
- \* date/time functions enhanced
- \* `NULL` insert/update/comparison fixed/enhanced
- \* TCL/TK lib and shell fixed to work with both `tck7.4/tk4.0` and `tcl7.5/tk4.1`

Bug Fixes (almost too numerous to mention)

- \* indexes
- \* storage management
- \* check for NULL pointer before dereferencing
- \* Makefile fixes

New Ports

- \* added SolarisX86 port
- \* added BSD/OS 2.1 port
- \* added DG/UX port

## A.34. Release 1.01

**Release date:** 1996-02-23

### A.34.1. Migration from version 1.0 to version 1.01

The following notes are for the benefit of users who want to migrate databases from Postgres95 1.0 to Postgres95 1.01.

If you are starting afresh with Postgres95 1.01 and do not need to migrate old databases, you do not need to read any further.

In order to Postgres95 version 1.01 with databases created with Postgres95 version 1.0, the following steps are required:

1. Set the definition of `NAMEDATALEN` in `src/Makefile.global` to 16 and `OIDNAMELEN` to 20.
2. Decide whether you want to use Host based authentication.
  - a. If you do, you must create a file name `pg_hba` in your top-level data directory (typically the value of your `$PGDATA`). `src/libpq/pg_hba` shows an example syntax.
  - b. If you do not want host-based authentication, you can comment out the line

```
HBA = 1
```

in `src/Makefile.global`

Note that host-based authentication is turned on by default, and if you do not take steps A or B above, the out-of-the-box 1.01 will not allow you to connect to 1.0 databases.

3. Compile and install 1.01, but **DO NOT** do the `initdb` step.
4. Before doing anything else, terminate your 1.0 postmaster, and backup your existing `$PGDATA` directory.
5. Set your `PGDATA` environment variable to your 1.0 databases, but set up path up so that 1.01 binaries are being used.

6. Modify the file `$PGDATA/PG_VERSION` from 5.0 to 5.1
7. Start up a new 1.01 postmaster
8. Add the new built-in functions and operators of 1.01 to 1.0 databases. This is done by running the new 1.01 server against your own 1.0 database and applying the queries attached and saving in the file `1.0_to_1.01.sql`. This can be done easily through `psql`. If your 1.0 database is name `testdb`:

```
% psql testdb -f 1.0_to_1.01.sql
```

and then execute the following commands (cut and paste from here):

```
-- add builtin functions that are new to 1.01

create function int4eqoid (int4, oid) returns bool as 'foo'
language 'internal';
create function oideqint4 (oid, int4) returns bool as 'foo'
language 'internal';
create function char2icregexeq (char2, text) returns bool as 'foo'
language 'internal';
create function char2icregexne (char2, text) returns bool as 'foo'
language 'internal';
create function char4icregexeq (char4, text) returns bool as 'foo'
language 'internal';
create function char4icregexne (char4, text) returns bool as 'foo'
language 'internal';
create function char8icregexeq (char8, text) returns bool as 'foo'
language 'internal';
create function char8icregexne (char8, text) returns bool as 'foo'
language 'internal';
create function char16icregexeq (char16, text) returns bool as 'foo'
language 'internal';
create function char16icregexne (char16, text) returns bool as 'foo'
language 'internal';
create function texticregexeq (text, text) returns bool as 'foo'
language 'internal';
create function texticregexne (text, text) returns bool as 'foo'
language 'internal';

-- add builtin functions that are new to 1.01

create operator = (leftarg = int4, rightarg = oid, procedure = int4eqoid);
create operator = (leftarg = oid, rightarg = int4, procedure = oideqint4);
create operator ~* (leftarg = char2, rightarg = text, procedure = char2icregexeq);
create operator !~* (leftarg = char2, rightarg = text, procedure = char2icregexne);
create operator ~* (leftarg = char4, rightarg = text, procedure = char4icregexeq);
create operator !~* (leftarg = char4, rightarg = text, procedure = char4icregexne);
create operator ~* (leftarg = char8, rightarg = text, procedure = char8icregexeq);
create operator !~* (leftarg = char8, rightarg = text, procedure = char8icregexne);
create operator ~* (leftarg = char16, rightarg = text, procedure = char16icregexeq);
create operator !~* (leftarg = char16, rightarg = text, procedure = char16icregexne);
create operator ~* (leftarg = text, rightarg = text, procedure = texticregexeq);
create operator !~* (leftarg = text, rightarg = text, procedure = texti-
cregexne);
```

## A.34.2. Changes

### Incompatibilities:

- \* 1.01 is backwards compatible with 1.0 database provided the user follow the steps outlined in the MIGRATION\_from\_1.0\_to\_1.01 file. If those steps are not taken, 1.01 is not compatible with 1.0 database.

### Enhancements:

- \* added PQdisplayTuples() to libpq and changed monitor and psql to use it
- \* added NeXT port (requires SysVIPC implementation)
- \* added CAST .. AS ... syntax
- \* added ASC and DESC keywords
- \* added 'internal' as a possible language for CREATE FUNCTION  
internal functions are C functions which have been statically linked into the postgres backend.
- \* a new type "name" has been added for system identifiers (table names, attribute names, etc.) This replaces the old char16 type. The of name is set by the NAMEDATALEN #define in src/Makefile.global
- \* a readable reference manual that describes the query language.
- \* added host-based access control. A configuration file (\$PGDATA/pg\_hba) is used to hold the configuration data. If host-based access control is not desired, comment out HBA=1 in src/Makefile.global.
- \* changed regex handling to be uniform use of Henry Spencer's regex code regardless of platform. The regex code is included in the distribution
- \* added functions and operators for case-insensitive regular expressions. The operators are ~\* and !~\*.
- \* pg\_dump uses COPY instead of SELECT loop for better performance

### Bug fixes:

- \* fixed an optimizer bug that was causing core dumps when functions calls were used in comparisons in the WHERE clause
- \* changed all uses of getuid to geteuid so that effective uids are used
- \* psql now returns non-zero status on errors when using -c
- \* applied public patches 1-14

## A.35. Release 1.0

Release date: 1995-09-05

## A.35.1. Changes

### Copyright change:

- \* The copyright of Postgres 1.0 has been loosened to be freely modifiable and modifiable for any purpose. Please read the COPYRIGHT file. Thanks to Professor Michael Stonebraker for making this possible.

Incompatibilities:

- \* date formats have to be MM-DD-YYYY (or DD-MM-YYYY if you're using EUROPEAN STYLE). This follows SQL-92 specs.
- \* "delimiters" is now a keyword

Enhancements:

- \* sql LIKE syntax has been added
- \* copy command now takes an optional USING DELIMITER specification. delimiters can be any single-character string.
- \* IRIX 5.3 port has been added.  
Thanks to Paul Walmsley and others.
- \* updated pg\_dump to work with new libpq
- \* \d has been added psql  
Thanks to Keith Parks
- \* regexp performance for architectures that use POSIX regex has been improved due to caching of precompiled patterns.  
Thanks to Alistair Crooks
- \* a new version of libpq++  
Thanks to William Wanders

Bug fixes:

- \* arbitrary userids can be specified in the createuser script
- \* \c to connect to other databases in psql now works.
- \* bad pg\_proc entry for float4inc() is fixed
- \* users with usecreatedb field set can now create databases without having to be usesuper
- \* remove access control entries when the entry no longer has any permissions
- \* fixed non-portable datetimes implementation
- \* added kerberos flags to the src/backend/Makefile
- \* libpq now works with kerberos
- \* typographic errors in the user manual have been corrected.
- \* btrees with multiple index never worked, now we tell you they don't work when you try to use them

## A.36. Postgres95 Release 0.03

Release date: 1995-07-21

### A.36.1. Changes

Incompatible changes:

- \* BETA-0.3 IS INCOMPATIBLE WITH DATABASES CREATED WITH PREVIOUS VERSIONS (due to system catalog changes and indexing structure changes).

- \* double-quote (") is deprecated as a quoting character for string literals; you need to convert them to single quotes (').
- \* name of aggregates (eg. int4sum) are renamed in accordance with the SQL standard (eg. sum).
- \* CHANGE ACL syntax is replaced by GRANT/REVOKE syntax.
- \* float literals (eg. 3.14) are now of type float4 (instead of float8 in previous releases); you might have to do typecasting if you depend on it being of type float8. If you neglect to do the typecasting and you assign a float literal to a field of type float8, you may get incorrect values stored!
- \* LIBPQ has been totally revamped so that frontend applications can connect to multiple backends
- \* the usesysid field in pg\_user has been changed from int2 to int4 to allow wider range of Unix user ids.
- \* the netbsd/freebsd/bsd o/s ports have been consolidated into a single BSD44\_derived port. (thanks to Alistair Crooks)

SQL standard-compliance (the following details changes that makes postgres95 more compliant to the SQL-92 standard):

- \* the following SQL types are now built-in: smallint, int(eger), float, real, char(N), varchar(N), date and time.

The following are aliases to existing postgres types:

smallint -> int2

integer, int -> int4

float, real -> float4

char(N) and varchar(N) are implemented as truncated text types. In addition, char(N) does blank-padding.

- \* single-quote (') is used for quoting string literals; " (in addition to \') is supported as means of inserting a single quote in a string
- \* SQL standard aggregate names (MAX, MIN, AVG, SUM, COUNT) are used (Also, aggregates can now be overloaded, i.e. you can define your own MAX aggregate to take in a user-defined type.)
- \* CHANGE ACL removed. GRANT/REVOKE syntax added.
  - Privileges can be given to a group using the "GROUP" keyword.

For example:

```
GRANT SELECT ON foobar TO GROUP my_group;
```

The keyword 'PUBLIC' is also supported to mean all users.

Privileges can only be granted or revoked to one user or group at a time.

"WITH GRANT OPTION" is not supported. Only class owners can change access control

- The default access control is to to grant users readonly access.

You must explicitly grant insert/update access to users. To change this, modify the line in

src/backend/utils/acl.h

that defines ACL\_WORLD\_DEFAULT

Bug fixes:

- \* the bug where aggregates of empty tables were not run has been fixed. Now, aggregates run on empty tables will return the initial conditions of the

aggregates. Thus, COUNT of an empty table will now properly return 0.  
MAX/MIN of an empty table will return a tuple of value NULL.

- \* allow the use of \; inside the monitor
- \* the LISTEN/NOTIFY asynchronous notification mechanism now work
- \* NOTIFY in rule action bodies now work
- \* hash indexes work, and access methods in general should perform better.  
creation of large btree indexes should be much faster. (thanks to Paul Aoki)

Other changes and enhancements:

- \* addition of an EXPLAIN statement used for explaining the query execution plan (eg. "EXPLAIN SELECT \* FROM EMP" prints out the execution plan for the query).
- \* WARN and NOTICE messages no longer have timestamps on them. To turn on timestamps of error messages, uncomment the line in src/backend/utils/elog.h:  
/\* define ELOG\_TIMESTAMPS \*/
- \* On an access control violation, the message "Either no such class or insufficient privilege" will be given. This is the same message that is returned when a class is not found. This dissuades non-privileged users from guessing the existence of privileged classes.
- \* some additional system catalog changes have been made that are not visible to the user.

libpgtcl changes:

- \* The -oid option has been added to the "pg\_result" tcl command. pg\_result -oid returns oid of the last tuple inserted. If the last command was not an INSERT, then pg\_result -oid returns "".
- \* the large object interface is available as pg\_lo\* tcl commands: pg\_lo\_open, pg\_lo\_close, pg\_lo\_creat, etc.

Portability enhancements and New Ports:

- \* flex/lex problems have been cleared up. Now, you should be able to use flex instead of lex on any platforms. We no longer make assumptions of what lexer you use based on the platform you use.
- \* The Linux-ELF port is now supported. Various configuration have been tested: The following configuration is known to work:  
kernel 1.2.10, gcc 2.6.3, libc 4.7.2, flex 2.5.2, bison 1.24  
with everything in ELF format,

New utilities:

- \* ipcclean added to the distribution  
ipcclean usually does not need to be run, but if your backend crashes and leaves shared memory segments hanging around, ipcclean will clean them up for you.

New documentation:

- \* the user manual has been revised and libpq documentation added.

## A.37. Postgres95 Release 0.02

Release date: 1995-05-25

### A.37.1. Changes

Incompatible changes:

- \* The SQL statement for creating a database is 'CREATE DATABASE' instead of 'CREATEDB'. Similarly, dropping a database is 'DROP DATABASE' instead of 'DESTROYDB'. However, the names of the executables 'createdb' and 'destroydb' remain the same.

New tools:

- \* `pgperl` - a Perl (4.036) interface to Postgres95
- \* `pg_dump` - a utility for dumping out a postgres database into a script file containing query commands. The script files are in a ASCII format and can be used to reconstruct the database, even on other machines and other architectures. (Also good for converting a Postgres 4.2 database to Postgres95 database.)

The following ports have been incorporated into postgres95-beta-0.02:

- \* the NetBSD port by Alistair Crooks
- \* the AIX port by Mike Tung
- \* the Windows NT port by Jon Forrest (more stuff but not done yet)
- \* the Linux ELF port by Brian Gallew

The following bugs have been fixed in postgres95-beta-0.02:

- \* new lines not escaped in COPY OUT and problem with COPY OUT when first attribute is a '.'
- \* cannot type return to use the default user id in createuser
- \* SELECT DISTINCT on big tables crashes
- \* Linux installation problems
- \* monitor doesn't allow use of 'localhost' as PGHOST
- \* psql core dumps when doing \c or \l
- \* the "pgtclsh" target missing from src/bin/pgtclsh/Makefile
- \* libpgtcl has a hard-wired default port number
- \* SELECT DISTINCT INTO TABLE hangs
- \* CREATE TYPE doesn't accept 'variable' as the internallength
- \* wrong result using more than 1 aggregate in a SELECT

## A.38. Postgres95 Release 0.01

Release date: 1995-05-01

Initial release.

# Bibliography

Selected references and readings for SQL and PostgreSQL.

Some white papers and technical reports from the original POSTGRES development team are available at the University of California, Berkeley, Computer Science Department web site<sup>1</sup>

## SQL Reference Books

Judith Bowman, Sandra Emerson, and Marcy Darnovsky, *The Practical SQL Handbook: Using Structured Query Language*, Third Edition, Addison-Wesley, ISBN 0-201-44787-8, 1996.

C. J. Date and Hugh Darwen, *A Guide to the SQL Standard: A user's guide to the standard database language SQL*, Fourth Edition, Addison-Wesley, ISBN 0-201-96426-0, 1997.

C. J. Date, *An Introduction to Database Systems*, Volume 1, Sixth Edition, Addison-Wesley, 1994.

Ramez Elmasri and Shamkant Navathe, *Fundamentals of Database Systems*, 3rd Edition, Addison-Wesley, ISBN 0-805-31755-4, August 1999.

Jim Melton and Alan R. Simon, *Understanding the New SQL: A complete guide*, Morgan Kaufmann, ISBN 1-55860-245-3, 1993.

Jeffrey D. Ullman, *Principles of Database and Knowledge: Base Systems*, Volume 1, Computer Science Press, 1988.

## PostgreSQL-Specific Documentation

Stefan Simkovic, *Enhancement of the ANSI SQL Implementation of PostgreSQL*, Department of Information Systems, Vienna University of Technology, November 29, 1998.

Discusses SQL history and syntax, and describes the addition of `INTERSECT` and `EXCEPT` constructs into PostgreSQL. Prepared as a Master's Thesis with the support of O. Univ. Prof. Dr. Georg Gottlob and Univ. Ass. Mag. Katrin Seyr at Vienna University of Technology.

A. Yu and J. Chen, The POSTGRES Group, *The Postgres95 User Manual*, University of California, Sept. 5, 1995.

Zelaine Fong, *The design and implementation of the POSTGRES query optimizer*<sup>2</sup>, University of California, Berkeley, Computer Science Department.

---

1. <http://s2k-ftp.CS.Berkeley.EDU:8000/postgres/papers/>  
2. <http://s2k-ftp.CS.Berkeley.EDU:8000/postgres/papers/UCB-MS-zfong.pdf>

## Proceedings and Articles

- Nels Olson, *Partial indexing in POSTGRES: research project*, University of California, UCB Engin T7.49.1993 O676, 1993.
- L. Ong and J. Goh, “A Unified Framework for Version Modeling Using Production Rules in a Database System”, *ERL Technical Memorandum M90/33*, University of California, April, 1990.
- L. Rowe and M. Stonebraker, “The POSTGRES data model<sup>3</sup>”, Proc. VLDB Conference, Sept. 1987.
- P. Seshadri and A. Swami, “Generalized Partial Indexes<sup>4</sup>”, Proc. Eleventh International Conference on Data Engineering, 6-10 March 1995, IEEE Computer Society Press, Cat. No.95CH35724, 1995, p. 420-7.
- M. Stonebraker and L. Rowe, “The design of POSTGRES<sup>5</sup>”, Proc. ACM-SIGMOD Conference on Management of Data, May 1986.
- M. Stonebraker, E. Hanson, and C. H. Hong, “The design of the POSTGRES rules system”, Proc. IEEE Conference on Data Engineering, Feb. 1987.
- M. Stonebraker, “The design of the POSTGRES storage system<sup>6</sup>”, Proc. VLDB Conference, Sept. 1987.
- M. Stonebraker, M. Hearst, and S. Potamianos, “A commentary on the POSTGRES rules system<sup>7</sup>”, *SIGMOD Record* 18(3), Sept. 1989.
- M. Stonebraker, “The case for partial indexes<sup>8</sup>”, *SIGMOD Record* 18(4), Dec. 1989, p. 4-11.
- M. Stonebraker, L. A. Rowe, and M. Hirohama, “The implementation of POSTGRES<sup>9</sup>”, *Transactions on Knowledge and Data Engineering* 2(1), IEEE, March 1990.
- M. Stonebraker, A. Jhingran, J. Goh, and S. Potamianos, “On Rules, Procedures, Caching and Views in Database Systems<sup>10</sup>”, Proc. ACM-SIGMOD Conference on Management of Data, June 1990.

3. <http://s2k-ftp.CS.Berkeley.EDU:8000/postgres/papers/ERL-M87-13.pdf>

4. <http://simon.cs.cornell.edu/home/praveen/papers/partindex.de95.ps.Z>

5. <http://s2k-ftp.CS.Berkeley.EDU:8000/postgres/papers/ERL-M85-95.pdf>

6. <http://s2k-ftp.CS.Berkeley.EDU:8000/postgres/papers/ERL-M87-06.pdf>

7. <http://s2k-ftp.CS.Berkeley.EDU:8000/postgres/papers/ERL-M89-82.pdf>

8. <http://s2k-ftp.CS.Berkeley.EDU:8000/postgres/papers/ERL-M89-17.pdf>

9. <http://s2k-ftp.CS.Berkeley.EDU:8000/postgres/papers/ERL-M90-34.pdf>

10. <http://s2k-ftp.CS.Berkeley.EDU:8000/postgres/papers/ERL-M90-36.pdf>

# Index

## Symbols

\$libdir, ?

## A

aggregate, ?  
aggregate functions, ?  
    extending, ?  
alias  
    (See label)  
    for table name in query, ?  
all, ?  
and  
    operator, ?  
any, ?, ?  
anyarray, ?  
arrays, ?, ?  
    constants, ?  
Australian time zones, ?  
auto-increment  
    (See serial)  
autocommit, ?  
average, 1  
    function, ?

## B

B-tree  
    (See indexes)  
backup, 82  
between, ?  
bigint, ?  
bigserial, ?  
binary strings  
    concatenation, ?  
    length, ?  
bison, ?  
bit strings  
    constants, ?  
    data type, ?  
BLOB  
    (See large object)

Boolean  
    data type, ?  
    operators  
        (See operators, logical)  
box (data type), ?  
BSD/OS, ?, ?

## C

case, ?  
case sensitivity  
    SQL commands, ?  
catalogs, ?  
character set encoding, ?  
character strings  
    concatenation, ?  
    constants, ?  
    data types, ?  
    length, ?  
cid, ?  
cidr, ?  
circle, ?  
client authentication, 55  
cluster, ?  
column, ?  
columns  
    system columns, 21  
col\_description, ?  
comments  
    in SQL, ?  
comparison  
    operators, ?  
concurrency, ?  
conditionals, ?  
configuration  
    server, ?  
configure, 5  
connection loss, ?  
constants, ?  
COPY, ?  
    with libpq, ?  
count, ?  
CREATE TABLE, ?  
createdb, ?  
crypt, ?  
cstring, ?  
currval, ?

**D**

- data area
  - (See database cluster)
- data types, ?, ?
  - constants, ?
  - extending, ?
  - numeric, ?
  - type casts, ?
- database, 50
  - creating, ?
- database cluster, ?
- date
  - constants, ?
  - current, ?
  - data type, ?
  - output format, ?
    - (See Also Formatting)
- date style, ?
- deadlock
  - timeout, ?
- decimal
  - (See numeric)
- DELETE, ?
- Digital UNIX
  - (See Tru64 UNIX)
- dirty read, ?
- disk space, 77
- disk usage, 95
- DISTINCT, ?, ?
- double precision, ?
- DROP TABLE, ?
- duplicate, ?
- dynamic loading, ?
- dynamic\_library\_path, ?, ?

**E**

- elog, ?
  - PL/Perl, ?
- embedded SQL
  - in C, ?
- environment variables, ?
- error message, ?
- escaping binary strings, ?
- escaping strings, ?
- except, ?
- exists, ?

**F**

- extending SQL, ?
  - types, ?
- false, ?
- FETCH
  - embedded SQL, ?
- files, ?
- flex, ?
- float4
  - (See real)
- float8
  - (See double precision)
- floating point, ?
- foreign key, ?
- formatting, ?
- FreeBSD, ?, ?, ?
- fsync, ?
- function, ?, ?
  - internal, ?
  - SQL, ?
- functions, ?

**G**

- genetic query optimization, ?
- GEQO
  - (See genetic query optimization)
- get\_bit, ?
- get\_byte, ?
- group, ?
- GROUP BY, ?

**H**

- hash
  - (See indexes)
- has\_database\_privilege, ?
- has\_function\_privilege, ?
- has\_language\_privilege, ?
- has\_schema\_privilege, ?
- has\_table\_privilege, ?
- HAVING, ?
- hierarchical database, ?
- HP-UX, ?, ?

**I**

- ident, ?
- identifiers, ?
- in, ?
- index scan, ?
- indexes, ?
  - B-tree, ?
  - hash, ?
  - multicolumn, ?
  - on functions, ?
  - partial, ?
  - R-tree, ?
  - unique, ?
- inet (data type), ?
- inheritance, ?, ?
- initlocation, ?
- input function, ?
- INSERT, ?
- installation, 1
  - on Windows, ?, ?
- int2
  - (See smallint)
- int4
  - (See integer)
- int8
  - (See bigint)
- integer, ?
- internal, ?
- intersection, ?
- interval, ?
- IRIX, ?
- IS NULL, ?
- isolation levels, ?
  - read committed, ?
  - read serializable, ?

**J**

- join, ?
  - outer, ?
  - self, ?
- joins, ?
  - cross, ?
  - left, ?
  - natural, ?
  - outer, ?

**K**

- Kerberos, 60
- key words
  - list of, ?
  - syntax, ?

**L**

- label
  - column, ?
  - table, ?
- language\_handler, ?
- large object, ?
- LC\_COLLATE, ?
- ldconfig, ?
- length
  - binary strings
    - (See binary strings, length)
  - character strings
    - (See character strings, length)
- libperl, ?
- libpgtcl, ?
- libpq, ?
- libpq-fe.h, ?
- libpq-int.h, ?, ?
- libpython, ?
- like, ?
- limit, ?
- line, ?
- Linux, ?, ?, ?
- locale, ?, 65
- locking, ?
- log files, 81

**M**

- MAC address
  - (See macaddr)
- macaddr (data type), ?
- MacOS X, ?, ?
- make, ?
- MANPATH, ?
  - (See Also man pages)
- max, ?
- MD5, ?

min, ?  
 multibyte, 68

## N

names  
   qualified, ?  
   unqualified, ?  
 namespaces, ?, ?  
 NetBSD, ?, ?, ?  
 network  
   addresses, ?  
 nextval, ?  
 nonblocking connection, ?, ?  
 nonrepeatable read, ?  
 not  
   operator, ?  
 not in, ?  
 notice processor, ?  
 NOTIFY, ?, ?  
 nullif, ?  
 numeric  
   constants, ?  
 numeric (data type), ?

## O

object identifier  
   data type, ?  
 object-oriented database, ?  
 obj\_description, ?  
 offset  
   with query results, ?  
 OID, ?, ?  
 opaque, ?  
 OpenBSD, ?, ?, ?  
 OpenSSL, ?  
   (See Also SSL)  
 operators, ?  
   logical, ?  
   precedence, ?  
   syntax, ?  
 or  
   operator, ?  
 Oracle, ?, ?  
 ORDER BY, ?, ?  
 output function, ?

overlay, ?  
 overloading, ?

## P

password, ?  
   .pgpass, ?  
 PATH, ?  
 path (data type), ?  
 Perl, ?  
 PGDATA, ?  
 PGDATABASE, ?  
 PGHOST, ?  
 PGPASSWORD, ?  
 PGPORT, ?  
 pgtcl  
   closing, ?  
   connecting, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?  
   connection loss, ?  
   creating, ?  
   delete, ?  
   export, ?  
   import, ?  
   notify, ?  
   opening, ?  
   positioning, ?, ?  
   query, ?  
   reading, ?  
   writing, ?  
 PGUSER, ?  
 pg\_config, ?, ?  
 pg\_conndefaults, ?  
 pg\_connect, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?  
 pg\_ctl, ?  
 pg\_dumpall, ?  
 pg\_execute, ?  
 pg\_function\_is\_visible, ?  
 pg\_get\_constraintdef, ?  
 pg\_get\_indexdef, ?  
 pg\_get\_ruledef, ?  
 pg\_get\_userbyid, ?  
 pg\_get\_viewdef, ?  
 pg\_hba.conf, 55  
 pg\_ident.conf, ?  
 pg\_lo\_close, ?  
 pg\_lo\_creat, ?  
 pg\_lo\_export, ?

pg\_lo\_import, ?  
 pg\_lo\_lseek, ?  
 pg\_lo\_open, ?  
 pg\_lo\_read, ?  
 pg\_lo\_tell, ?  
 pg\_lo\_unlink, ?  
 pg\_lo\_write, ?  
 pg\_opclass\_is\_visible, ?  
 pg\_operator\_is\_visible, ?  
 pg\_table\_is\_visible, ?  
 pg\_type\_is\_visible, ?  
 phantom read, ?  
 PIC, ?  
 PL/Perl, ?  
 PL/pgSQL, ?  
 PL/Python, ?  
 PL/SQL, ?  
 PL/Tcl, ?  
 point, ?  
 polygon, ?  
 port, ?  
 postgres user, ?  
 postmaster, ?, ?  
 ps  
     to monitor activity, 87  
 psql, ?  
 Python, ?

## Q

qualified names, ?  
 query, ?  
 quotes  
     and identifiers, ?  
     escaping, ?

## R

R-tree  
     (See indexes)  
 range table, ?  
 readline, ?  
 real, ?  
 record, ?  
 referential integrity, ?  
 regclass, ?  
 regoper, ?

regoperator, ?  
 regproc, ?  
 regprocedure, ?  
 regression test, ?  
 regtype, ?  
 regular expressions, ?, ?  
     (See Also pattern matching)  
 reindex, 80  
 relation, ?  
 relational database, ?  
 row, ?  
 rules, ?  
     and views, ?

## S

schema  
     current, ?  
 schemas, ?  
     current schema, ?  
 SCO OpenServer, ?  
 search path, ?  
     changing at runtime, ?  
     current, ?  
 search\_path, ?  
 SELECT, ?  
     select list, ?  
 semaphores, 38  
 sequences, ?  
     and serial type, ?  
 sequential scan, ?  
 serial, ?  
 serial4, ?  
 serial8, ?  
 SETOF, ?  
     (See Also function)  
 setting  
     current, ?  
     set, ?  
 setval, ?  
 set\_bit, ?  
 set\_byte, ?  
 shared libraries, ?  
 shared memory, 38  
 SHMMAX, ?  
 SIGHUP, ?, ?, ?  
 similar to, ?

- sliced bread
    - (See TOAST)
  - smallint, ?
  - Solaris, ?, ?, ?
  - some, ?
  - sorting
    - query results, ?
  - SPI
    - allocating space, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?
    - connecting, ?, ?, ?, ?
    - copying tuple descriptors, ?
    - copying tuples, ?, ?
    - cursors, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?
    - decoding tuples, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?
    - disconnecting, ?
    - executing, ?
    - modifying tuples, ?
  - SPI\_connect, ?
  - SPI\_copytuple, ?
  - SPI\_copytupledesc, ?
  - SPI\_copytupleintoslot, ?
  - SPI\_cursor\_close, ?
  - SPI\_cursor\_fetch, ?
  - SPI\_cursor\_find, ?
  - SPI\_cursor\_move, ?
  - SPI\_cursor\_open, ?
  - SPI\_exec, ?
  - SPI\_except, ?
  - SPI\_finish, ?
  - SPI\_fname, ?
  - SPI\_fnumber, ?
  - SPI\_freeplan, ?
  - SPI\_freetuple, ?
  - SPI\_freetuptable, ?
  - SPI\_getbinval, ?
  - SPI\_getrelname, ?
  - SPI\_gettype, ?
  - SPI\_gettypeid, ?
  - SPI\_getvalue, ?
  - spi\_lastoid, ?
  - SPI\_modifytuple, ?
  - SPI\_palloc, ?
  - SPI\_pfree, ?
  - SPI\_prepare, ?
  - SPI\_realloc, ?
  - SPI\_saveplan, ?
  - ssh, 45
  - SSL, ?, 44, ?
  - standard deviation, ?
  - statistics, 88
  - strings
    - (See character strings)
  - subqueries, ?, ?
  - subquery, ?
  - substring, ?, ?, ?
  - sum, ?
  - superuser, ?
  - syntax
    - SQL, ?
- T**
- table, ?
  - Tcl, ?, ?
  - TCP/IP, ?
  - text
    - (See character strings)
  - threads
    - with libpq, ?
  - tid, ?
  - time
    - constants, ?
    - current, ?
    - data type, ?
    - output format, ?
    - (See Also Formatting)
  - time with time zone
    - data type, ?
  - time without time zone
    - time, ?
  - time zone, ?
  - time zones, ?, ?
  - timeout
    - authentication, ?
    - deadlock, ?
  - timestamp
    - data type, ?
  - timestamp with time zone
    - data type, ?
  - timestamp without time zone
    - data type, ?
  - timezone
    - conversion, ?
  - TOAST, ?
    - and user-defined types, ?

- transaction ID
  - wraparound, 79
- transaction isolation level, ?
- transactions, ?
- trigger, ?
- triggers
  - in PL/Tcl, ?
- Tru64 UNIX, ?
- true, ?
- types
  - (See data types)

## U

- union, ?
- UnixWare, ?, ?
- unqualified names, ?
- UPDATE, ?
- upgrading, 4, 85
- user
  - current, ?

## V

- vacuum, 77
- variance, ?
- version, ?, ?
- view, ?
- views
  - updating, ?
- void, ?

## W

- where, ?

## X

- xid, ?

## Y

- yacc, ?